

A Key to Chinese Speech and Writing

Joël Bellassen Zhang Pengpeng

字

启蒙

Volume I

SINOLINGUA





若埃尔·白乐桑，生于1950年，1973年至1975年在北京语言学院和北京大学学习，现为巴黎第七大学副教授及法国汉语教师协会主席，汉语教学专家，著有 *Les idéogrammes chinois ou l'Empire du sens*, *Chinois mode d'emploi - grammaire pratique et exercices -*，等。

Joël Bellassen, born in 1950, studied at the Beijing Language Institute and Beijing University from 1973 to 1975. At present he is an associate professor at the Seventh University of Paris and chairman of the French Association of Chinese Language Teachers. He is a specialist in Chinese language didactics and author of *Les idéogrammes chinois ou l'Empire du sens*, *Chinois mode d'emploi - grammaire pratique et exercices -*, etc.

汉语语言文字启蒙

A Key to Chinese Speech and Writing

I

Joël Bellassen
University Paris 7

With the Collaboration of
Zhang Pengpeng
Beijing Language and Culture University

Translator
Christian Artuso

华语教学出版社 北京
SINOLINGUA BEIJING

First Edition 1997
Fifth Printing 2009

Original title published in French
Méthode d'Initiation à la Langue et à l'Écriture chinoises
@La Compagnie/Bellassen 1989

The character 字 on the front cover is the original handwriting of Yan Zhenqing,
A great calligrapher of the Tang Dynasty.

ISBN 978-7-80052-507-0
Copyright 1997 by Sinolingua
Published by Sinolingua
24 Baiwanzhuang Road, Beijing 100037, China
Tel: (86)10-68320585
Fax: (86)10-68326333
<http://www.sinolingua.com.cn>
E-mail: hyjx@sinolingua.com.cn
Printed by Beijing Songyuan Printing Co. Ltd.

Distributed by China International
Book Trading Corporation
35 Chegongzhuang Xilu, P.O. Box 399
Beijing 100044, China

Printed in the People's Republic of China

Preface to the English Edition

The two volumes that make up this method of learning Chinese were published in France at the end of 1989 (I) and 1991 (II) respectively. They are intended for students with no previous knowledge of the language.

We would like to express our gratitude to those colleagues in Germany, America, England, China and Scandinavia who, acquainted with the French manuals, first put forth the idea of an English edition. Our thanks go to them for the continued interest they have shown in the present volumes, in which there is, no doubt, room for improvement. This interest, we feel, has been kindled by an entirely different conception of learning Chinese. Departing from the usual form of teaching in vogue for the last forty years, this new approach is nevertheless intrinsically traditional, in that it shows a great respect for the originality of the Chinese language.

In every aspect of life, only when we chose to look reality in the face, can we avoid encounters with conflict and disorder. In terms of learning Chinese, the written language is not merely a graphic duplicate of the oral sounds. Bearing this consideration in mind, Chinese students as well as their professors must adopt two separate approaches of the language which consist of distinguishing two systems of logic of thought. Those two systems are not identical and they may even conflict with each other. Meanwhile, one has to keep in mind that the Chinese characters as fundamental unit of written language should always be entitled to a specific place and that is what I strove to do in this book. We would like to thank Mrs. Anne Alexis and Ms Jocelyne Finazzi for their attentive editing.

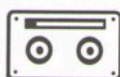
J. B.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Abbreviations and Symbols.....	2	Sequence 2.2 – Lesson 8.....	109
Introduction.....	3	Map of China.....	118
Chinese Writing.....	5	Sequence 2.3 – Lesson 9.....	119
Frequency Table.....	8	“Snowball” Version 3.....	127
<i>Pinyin</i>	9	Sequence 2.4 – Lesson 10.....	129
Graphic Elements (Radicals).....	14	Sequence 2.5 – Lesson 11.....	139
Table of 400 Characters.....	15	Sequence 2.6 – Lesson 12.....	149
Key.....	16	“Snowball” Version 4.....	157
		Zhuangzi and the Butterfly (Story).....	159
PREPARATION	1		
Sequence 0.0 – Lesson 0.....	3	PART 3	161
Sequence 0.5 – Lesson 0, 5.....	11	Sequence 3.1 – Lesson 13.....	163
Numbers and Dates.....	19	Sequence 3.2 – Lesson 14.....	175
		Sequence 3.3 – Lesson 15.....	185
PART 1	25	“Snowball” Version 5.....	194
Sequence 1.1 – Lesson 1.....	27	The Animals of the Horoscope.....	195
Sequence 1.2 – Lesson 2.....	35	Sequence 3.4 – Lesson 16.....	197
Sequence 1.25 – Lesson 2, 5.....	45	Sequence 3.5 – Lesson 17.....	207
Sequence 1.3 – Lesson 3.....	55	Sequence 3.6 – Lesson 18.....	217
“Snowball” Version 1.....	63	“Snowball” Version 6.....	226
Sequence 1.4 – Lesson 4.....	65	Old Meat.....	227
Dynasty Time Line.....	73	<i>Nanniwan</i> (Folk Song).....	228
Sequence 1.5 – Lesson 5.....	75	Texts in Complex Characters.....	230
Sequence 1.6 – Lesson 6.....	85	Translations.....	250
“Snowball” Version 2.....	93	Grammar Review.....	256
A Landscape Painting (Poem).....	94	Vocabulary.....	259
		Table of Tapes.....	276
PART 2	95		
Sequence 2.1 – Lesson 7.....	97		

ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

abbr. abbreviation
 arch. archaic
 D. O. direct object
 el. element
 e. g. for example
 int. interrogative
 lit. literally
 Mw..... Measure Word
 neg. negation
 part. particle
 phon. phonetic
 pron. pronunciation
 pol. polite
 prep. preposition
 QVb.....Qualifying Verb
 S. Sequence
 Vb.....verb



tape



tape counter



decomposition by element



stroke order



dialogue



handwriting



narration



origin

INTRODUCTION

“Once upon a time in the north of China, there lived a farmer who, wanting to hasten the growth of his new shoots, went every morning to pull them up slightly. After a short time the shoots withered and died.”

The ancient wisdom of the Chinese teaches us through this story that we must not fight against the nature of things. This is the first idea that guided me in devising this method. Many textbooks (Chinese ones included) westernise and “alphabeticise” Chinese. It is surely far more appropriate, however, to present the language as it really is, to reveal its own logic, its own spirit.

It is generally agreed that learning Chinese is a question of memory. Memory, however, is afraid of emptiness; it needs supports. Any method of learning Chinese must be constructed accordingly, providing where possible the essential elements for learning every Chinese character or sinogram (we have borrowed this new term from Delphine Weulersse and Nicolas Lyssenko, authors of *Methode programmée du chinois moderne*).

These supports will be visual (the student will readily observe a character’s original design), auditory (the student who remembers things when he hears them will benefit from saying out aloud the elements that compose a character) and gestural (the stroke order and positioning).

Furthermore, considering the effort involved in memorising them, the number of new sinograms in a text must not exceed a certain threshold: it is often far better to have two texts of ten lines than one of twenty.

The Chinese language is made up of signs. This is an unavoidable fact generally ignored by textbooks that present only words without paying attention to the characters that make them up.

Our method proposes to give characters the place they deserve and to reveal them in their many different facets .

Some sinograms are extremely rare whilst others are very frequently used. Frequency of usage is a major, although not absolute criterion in selecting the characters that make up this book. The naming of the characters in the dialogues for example was used as a chance to integrate other frequently-used sinograms that had not previously appeared in the book. The 400 characters used in the texts were chosen in such a way as to permit the recognition of 66.27% of all characters appearing in current reading material. They also constitute almost the entire list entitled SMIC (“Seuil Minimum Indispensable de Caractères” i. e. Indispensable Minimum Threshold of Characters) established by “L’Institut national de la recherche pédagogique” that serves as a standard for the level required for the (French) Baccalaureat.

Chinese characters are constructed with a puzzle-like logic and they are combined with a logic much like that of dominoes. The character “bright” for example is composed of two “pieces”, the “sun” and the “moon” and when this character is combined with the character “white” it forms the word “to understand”. Is it not therefore advantageous to learn these new signs and to explore the different possible combinations? This type of synthesis as utilised in all three sequences of this book is the application of a “snowball” effect that is unique to Chinese.

“Once upon a time in ancient China, a musician who had just finished composing a piece of music caught sight of a buffalo in a field and played for it the tune on his lute. The indifferent buffalo continued to browse on the grass.”

Let us know how to marry our thoughts and acts with our objectives. Let us know how to adapt to those we communicate with as this story tells us. The originality of a language such as Chinese can neither be without consequence for the way we learn it, nor for the writing of a textbook such as this one.

If this Fundamental Approach manages, not to bring solutions, but at least to outline the overall picture and open new doors, it will have served its purpose.

Joël Bellassen

Paris, Septembre 1989

CHINESE WRITING

On its own, Chinese writing gives the whole of the Chinese language a radically different appearance. It is a non-alphabetic, non-phonetic writing. Unlike the Latin, Greek, Cyrillic, Arabic and Hebrew alphabets it is not a code that indicates sounds. It is the painting of meaning, of ideas. The meaning of a character can be learnt without going through the stage of learning its pronunciation. A sinogram in isolation, to a certain extent, seems to be just like a logo, a road sign or an Arabic numeral.

Owing to this fact, China, a true tower of Babel with regards to its different pronunciations and dialects, has found in its writing system a unifying element. Furthermore, such different languages as Korean, Japanese and Vietnamese have also adopted these Chinese signs. Leibniz, a German philosopher from the Age of Enlightenment even saw in Chinese a possible universal writing system.

Consequently the present Chinese world is the only great civilisation of which writing has not known the tremendous leap towards abstraction that the appearance of an alphabet constitutes. Language and writing being far more than simple instruments of communication, we can appreciate that this is a major fact of which all the consequences are undoubtedly still far from being measured.

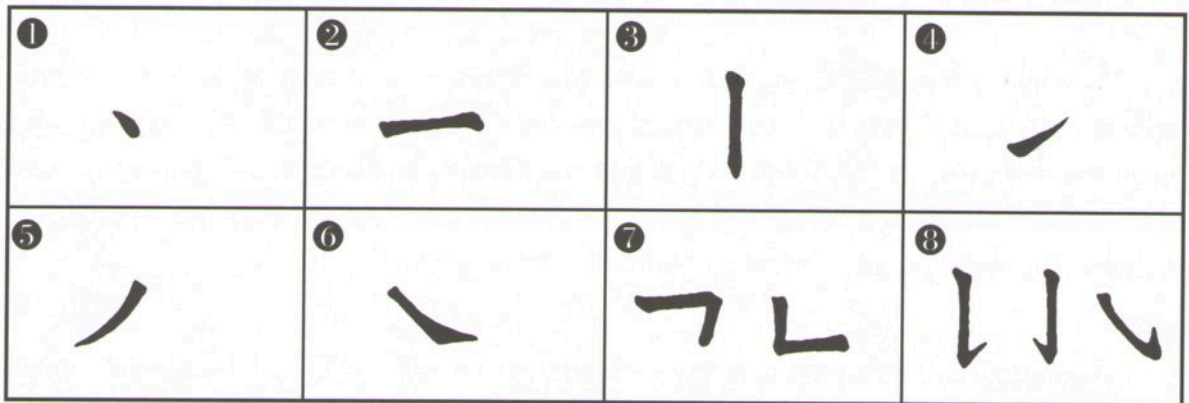
On their own, sinograms are a whole world to be explored. Apart from the different meanings they can have, they also possess their own structure, their rhythm and their history.

One can never “read Chinese”; one can know a certain amount of characters, and it is preferable that the number be as high as possible! However one is always at the mercy of “Meeting a tiger in one’s path” i. e. an unknown character. On the other hand, Chinese writing is such that a child can learn several signs at two or three years of age.

Sinograms have a consistent and independent form. They must be centred inside an imaginary square without occupying the entire square.

The strokes, with their interior movement, order and orientation are the basis of sinograms in the field of calligraphy. There are eight fundamental strokes:

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| ① The point | ⑤ The left descending stroke |
| ② The horizontal stroke (left to right) | ⑥ The right descending stroke |
| ③ The vertical stroke (top to bottom) | ⑦ The bending stroke |
| ④ The upcutting stroke | ⑧ The hooked stroke |



The essential rules of stroke order are as follows:

	Horizontal then vertical	一 十
	From top to bottom	一 三
	From left to right	丿 川
	The outside then the inside	月 月
	Close after filling the frame	囗 因
	Left descending then right descending stroke	ノ 人
	The middle stroke then the left side then the right side	丨 小 小
	The point comes last	王 玉

With regards to memorising sinograms, it is the graphic elements, true “puzzle pieces”, making up each character that are the base units. Seen from this angle a sinogram with many strokes is not necessarily a “complicated one”.

Sinograms can be classified into four large families:

- 1) Pictograms: Stylised or symbolic representations of reality (e. g. the sign “tree” showing its branches, trunk and roots).
- 2) Ideograms: associations of ideas from simple elements (e. g. the sign “forest” is composed of two trees).
- 3) Ideophonograms: composed of a pictographic root or “radical” and another element suggesting the pronunciation of the new whole thus formed (e. g. the sign “to listen” wén is composed of the semantic root “ear” and a phonetic element which in isolation is pronounced men). In a considerable number of cases the phonetic also plays a semantic role at the same time.
- 4) Borrowings: e. g. there once was a character “waist” which was pronounced yào like the verb “to want” which did not have a sign of its own. This character was therefore borrowed to mean “to want” and in order to distinguish the two meanings, the flesh radical was added to the character “waist”.

The phonological scheme of a sinogram is a tonal syllable. There are about 400 syllables.

One must not confuse the terms word and sinogram. A sinogram is not necessarily a word and in this case it cannot be used on its own. For example, the sinogram guó means “country” but it must be combined with jīā (“family”) to form the word “country”.

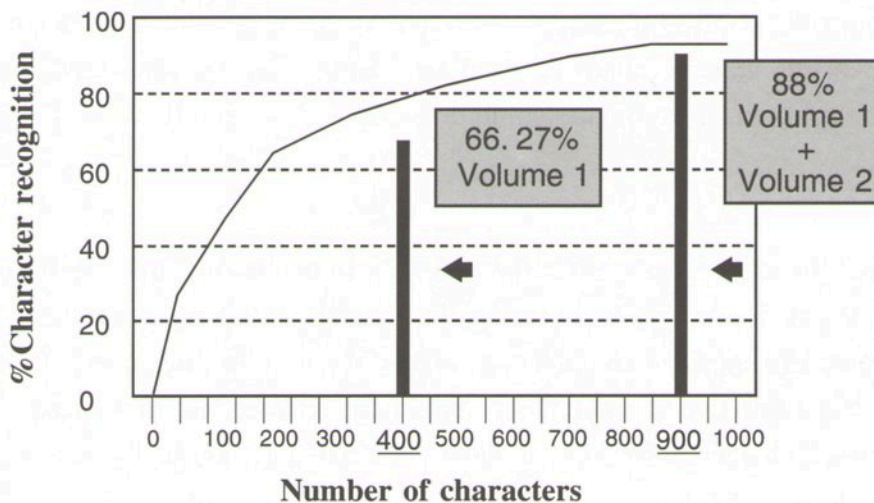
Towards the end of the 1950’s the People’s Republic of China began to simplify a certain number of characters by reducing the number of stroke. Books and newspapers are now printed in simplified characters as is also the case in Singapore. These are written horizontally from left to right. In Hong Kong, Taiwan and in foreign China towns the unsimplified characters written in the traditional way, vertically and from right to left, are still in use.

- **T**here is a magical dimension to Chinese characters. Some sinograms are believed to be good luck charms (on or above doorways). Furthermore, the act of writing certain signs with a brush can have a deep symbolic significance. It confirms the prestige of their author and honours the person or the place they are dedicated to.
- **T**here is a gymnastic dimension to Chinese characters: To write a character presupposes breathing control, steadiness of gesture and great concentration. . . all those concepts that are found in martial arts.
- **T**here is an aesthetic dimension to Chinese characters: Calligraphic signs beautify homes and make up gallery exhibitions in just the same way as paintings.
- **F**inally, Chinese writing by its own originality even leaves its mark on the brain. By the manner in which characters are used and the commitment of images to memory they necessitate as well as by the very special motor skills required, Chinese writing employs the right brain as much as the left which is normally associated with language.

FREQUENCY TABLE

Frequency of usage of characters in modern readings

(Source: *Chinese Character Frequency Dictionary* – Beijing 1986)



PINYIN

There have been many different systems of transcription used for learning to pronounce Chinese. Once, the name of the Chinese capital could be written “Peking” or “Pekin”. Today the official transcription accepted on an international basis is the Pinyin alphabet developed in China at the end of the 1950’s. Peking must now be written “Beijing”.

1 – INITIALS



b	p	m	f
d	t	n	l
g	k	h	
j	q	x	
z	c	s	
zh	ch	sh	r

- **m, f, n, l, h,** and **sh** are pronounced as in English
- **d** like “t” in “straight” (unaspirated)
- j** like “g” in “genius” (unaspirated)
- z** like “ds” in “beds”
- zh** like “j” in job
- **b** like “p” in “spin” (unaspirated)
- g** a soft unaspirated “k” sound
- x** like “sh” in “sheep” but with the corners of the lips drawn back
- r** somewhat like “ge” in lodge

- ➔ Particular attention should be paid to the pronunciation of the so called “aspirated” consonants.

It is necessary to breath heavily after the original consonant is sounded:

p = p' (like in “pop”)

q = ch harder than “ch” in cheap

t = t' (like in “tap”)

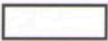
c = ts' (like in “cats”), with aspiration

k = k' (like in “kangaroo”)

ch = ch' (tongue curled back, aspiration)



➔ Distinction between certain initials:



b/p **d/t** **g/k** **j/q** **z/c** **zh/ch**

2 – FINALS

Vowels do not present any particular difficulty in pronunciation. When they are combined they must not be pronounced separately.

	i	u	ü
a	ia	ua	
o		uo	
i	ie		üe
e			
er			
ai		uai	
ei		uei	
ao	iao		
ou	iou		
an	ian	uan	üan
en	in	uen	üen
ang	iang	uang	
eng	ing	ueng	
ong	iong		



➔ **ie** like “ye” in “yes”

➔ **e** like “e” in “her” (open)

➔ **-r** (final) like “er” in “sister” (American pronunciation)

ai like “y” as in “by” (light)

ei like “ay” as in “bay” (light)

ou like “o” in “go”

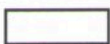
an like “an” in “can” (without stressing the “n”)

➔ **-ng** (final) a nasalised sound like the “ng” in “bang”
without pronouncing the “g”

- ➔ **an** preceded by **y** or **i** = “yen” without stressing the “n”
- ➔ In **zi**, **ci**, **si**, **zhi**, **chi**, **shi** and **ri** the **i** is not pronounced. It indicates that the consonant only is pronounced.
E. g. **zi** = “ds” as in “beds”
ri = “r” as in “right”
- ➔ The consonants **j**, **q** and **x** are all followed by long vowels like the “ee” in “bee”.
- ➔ When placed in the initial position **-u** and **-i** are written as **w** and **y** respectively.



➔ Distinction between certain finals:



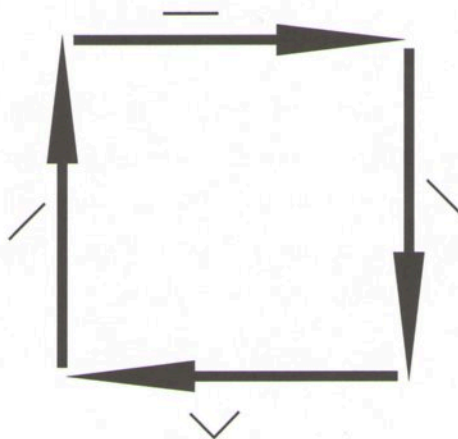
in/ing **en/eng** **an/ang**

3 – TONES

The pronunciation of each syllable i. e. each sinogram includes a tonal melody. There are four accented tones, a high tone, a low tone, a rising tone and a falling tone. On a chart of the movement of the vocal chords and the muscles that control them, the high tone consists of a prolonged stretch, the low tone a prolonged retraction, the rising tone consists of a normal tension followed by a stretch, and the falling tone consists of a slight stretch and then a sharp retraction.



mā mother
má hemp
mǎ horse
mà to insult



The four tones are usually called:

First tone: this is the high tone, high in pitch and even. It is conveyed (only above a *pinyin* transcription and not above sinograms) by the sign – (mā).

Second tone: this is the rising tone, starting from a low pitch and rising briefly. It is conveyed by the sign / (má) and corresponds roughly to the intonation of the English “Eh?”.

Third tone: this is the low tone and is naturally inflected. It is conveyed by the sign v (mǎ).

Fourth tone: this is the falling tone, starting from a high pitch and descending briefly. It is conveyed by the sign \ (mà) and corresponds roughly to the intonation of “NO!”.

- ➔ **T**here is also a neutral tone. It is short and unaccented. Its pitch relies on a natural extension of the preceding tone. It is conveyed by the absence of a sign (ma).
- ➔ **W**hen one low tone follows another, the first one becomes a rising tone.

Having a good pronunciation depends greatly on getting the tones right (of the sounds only the aspirated consonants pose any real problem). Of all the difficulties found in learning Chinese, the problem of tones is undoubtedly the most difficult. It would therefore be advisable to listen often to the cassette and to try to imitate the melody of the sentences as a whole.



PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES



—	—	Shāndōng Shandong	fēijī aeroplane	fāyīn pronunciation	guānxīn to care for
—	/	Zhōngguó China	huāchá jasmine tea	jīnnián this year	huānyíng welcome
—	✓	kāishuǐ boiling water	gāngbǐ fountain pen	shēntǐ health	jīchǎng airport
—	\	gōngzuò to work	chīfàn to eat	yīyuàn hospital	shāngdiàn shop
—		tāmen they	zhīdao to know	duōshao how many	gēge older brother

/	—	Nánjīng Nanjing	shíjiān (period of) time	zuótiān yesterday	Chángjiāng the Yangtze River
/	/	hóngchá black tea	tóngxué schoolmate	Huánghé the Yellow River	chángcháng often
/	✓	cháguǎn tea house	liángshuǐ cold water	chíjiǔ lasting	rénkǒu population
/	\	niúròu beef	nánkàn ugly	báicài cabbage	yíyàng the same
/		míngzi name	shíhou (point in) time/moment	xuésheng student	péngyou friend

✓	—	lǎoshī teacher	Běijīng Beijing	xǐhuān to like	huǒchē train
✓	/	Fǎguó France	xiǎoshí hour	kěnéng maybe	shuǐpíng level
✓	✓	nǐhǎo hello	Kǒngzǐ Confucius	guǎngchǎng square, plaza	Běihǎi Beihai
✓	\	mǐfàn rice	hǎoxiàng it seems	zhǔyào main	hǎohàn brave
✓		jiǎozi ravioli	mǔqīn mother	wǎnshang evening	zǎoshang morning

\	—	Sìchuān Sichuan	shàngbān to go to work	qìchē car	kètīng parlour
\	/	jiùxié old shoe	pàrén to be afraid	dìtú map	sìshí forty
\	✓	Rìběn Japan	Hànyǔ Chinese	Shànghǎi Shanghai	fànguǎn restaurant
\	\	guìxìng surname	Hànzi sinogram	huàbào illustrated magazine	zàijiàn goodbye
\		àiren spouse	dìfang place	xièxie thank you	bàba daddy, papa

-r final	nǎr where?	zhèr here	nàr over there	yìdiǎnr a little
	nánháir boy	nǚháir girl		

GRAPHIC ELEMENTS (RADICALS)

犛	animal with claws	力	strength	止	foot
木	tree - wood	冫	ice	石	stone
弓	bow (archery)	爪	claw	殳	stake, mace
竹	bamboo	斤	axe	雨	rain
户	single door	戈	dagger-axe, halberd	鱼	fish
虫	insect	艹	grass	门	door
青	blue - green	欠	person with mouth open	寸	thumb
口	mouth	亻	person	厶	private
牛	cattle	匕	upside-down person, dagger	礻	rites
田	field	足	leg	米	rice
车	chariot - vehicle	舌	tongue	王	king or jade
马	horse	士	scholar, literati, soldier	酉	container
心	heart	月	moon or flesh-meat	八	dividing up
忄	heart	扌	hand	纟	silk
贝	seashell	又	right hand	豆	soya bean or vessel
刀	knife	攴	hand holding a stick	日	sun
刂	knife	疒	sickness	立	standing up
瓜	melon	走	walk	几	small table
禾	cereal	辵	walk quickly	其	sieve
鬼	ghost	羊	sheep	土	earth
卜	divination	钅	metal	冫	mound, knoll (when on left of a sinogram)
龙	dragon	母	mother	巾	cloth
氵	water	饣	food	宀	roof (two strokes)
口	wall, enclosure	目	eye	宀	roof
乍	collar	隹	bird with short tail	工	work
子	child	鸟	bird with long tail	页	head
方	place	耳	ear	冫	town (when on right of a sinogram)
女	woman	彡	ornament	见	see
火	fire	西	west	衤	clothing
灬	fire	讠	word		
儿	son	彳	step with left foot		
矢	arrow				

TABLE OF 400 SINOGRAMS

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T

- 1 啊爱安八把吧白百班半办包报杯北本比笔边便
2 遍别病不才菜茶差长常场唱车成城吃出处川春
3 次从错打大带当到道的得等底地第点电店丁定
4 冬东懂动都对多饿儿二发法饭方房放非飞分份
5 风夫服父干刚钢高告哥歌个给跟更工公共古关
6 馆光广贵国果过还孩海汉好喝河和黑很红后候
7 湖虎花画化话欢黄回会活火机鸡几己家间见江
8 讲饺叫教今金近进京九酒久就旧觉开看可课刻
9 孔口快筷块来老乐了累冷离李里立连凉两辆 0
10 零六龙楼路马吗买卖慢忙毛么没美每门们梦米
11 面民名明母拿哪那男南难脑呢能你年念鸟您牛
12 女旁朋皮片票平七期骑起气汽千前钱亲轻请秋
13 区去然让热人认日肉如三色山商上少谁身什生
14 声升师十时识始是事市室收手书水睡说思四诉
15 算虽岁所他她它太疼提题体天田听同头图外完
16 晚万王往忘为位文问我无五午物西息喜下先现
17 香想象小校些鞋写谢新心信星行醒姓兴休学呀
18 言阳羊样要药也夜一医衣以意因音影硬用有友
19 又鱼语雨元园远院月在再早怎站张找这着真正
20 知只中钟种重主住祝庄子字自走租最昨作做坐

KEY

It is strongly advised to avoid any *pinyin* annotation under sinograms. In this area as in others, it is far better to go slowly but surely.

- The DIALOGUES are drawn up in such a way as to allow the reader to avoid referring to the English at first.
- The NARRATED PASSAGES employ the same vocabulary as the dialogues and can be learnt by heart.
- The HANDWRITTEN PASSAGES will allow the reader to get accustomed to the appearance of written manuscripts.
- The NEW WORDS are arranged according to word class, the words being classed as they would in Chinese grammar.
- The section SINOGRAMS – PRESENTATION presents new words composed with the new sinograms. The usage of these words can be varied according to the learner's level and objectives. At first they can be read aloud and then an attempt be made to guess their meaning.
- The section SINOGRAMS – MEMORY TECHNIQUE presents every sinogram in three aspects: the stroke order and orientation; analysis in graphic elements and the origin of the sinogram (even if it is not a scientific work on this subject, the present method proposes however to indicate the most justifiable explanation so as to show a character's source and to assist in memorising it).
- The GRAMMAR includes an EXPLANATIONS section with examples and an APPLICATIONS section with substitution exercises.
- The CIVILISATION section presents several points connected to the theme of the sequence.
- The "SNOWBALL" VERSIONS capitalise the sinograms already learnt and bring them to life by using them to generate new words.

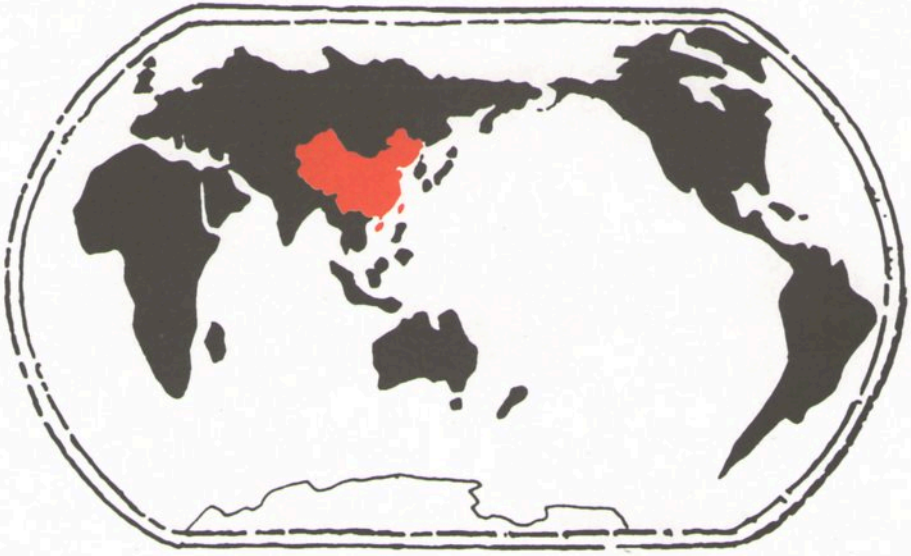
PREPARATION

Sequences

0

0.5

Numbers and Dates



第0课 中国大，日本小。



中国大，日本小。



王：中国大吗？

马：中国很大。

王：日本大吗？

马：日本不大，很小。



中国大，日本小。

NEW WORDS



NOUNS

中国	Zhōngguó	China
日本	Rìběn	Japan
王	Wáng	[surname]
马	Mǎ	[surname]

ADVERBS

很	hěn	very
不	bù	not, no

QUALIFYING VERBS

大	dà	to be big
小	xiǎo	to be small

INTERROGATIVE

吗	ma	[interrogative particle]
---	----	--------------------------

SINOGRAMS

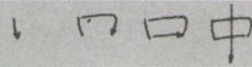
PRESENTATION

中	zhōng zhòng	middle, medium to hit a target	中国人
王	wáng	king, [surname]	王国, 国王, 小王
国	guó	country	大国, 小国
大	dà	big, to be big, adult	大小, 大人, 人大
日	rì	day, sun	日本人
本	běn	root, origin	本人, 本国
小	xiǎo	small, to be small	小人, 大小
马	mǎ	horse, [surname]	小马
吗	ma	[interrogative particle]	
很	hěn	very	
不	bù	[negation] no, not	不三不四

SINOGRAMS

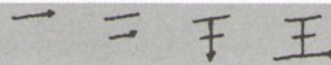
MEMORY TECHNIQUE

中



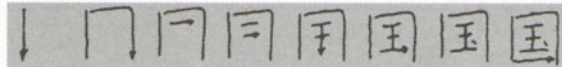
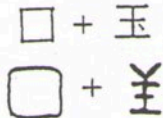
an arrow in the *middle* of a target

王



a weapon (machete), the blade at the bottom, symbol of power

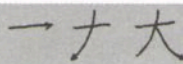
国



element indicating borders + "jade"

wall, enclosure radical + pieces of jade on a string

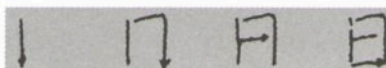
大



"person" + "one"

a person stretching his arms outward

日



the *sun* (shown as a circle) with an indication of either its matter, a sun spot or a legendary animal

本



一 十 才 木 本



木 + 一 "tree" + "one"



a tree, marked at its roots

小



丿 小 小



three grains of rice

马 馬



㇇ 马 马



a horse and its mane

吗 嗎



丨 口 口 吗



口 + 马 "mouth" + "horse"

很



丨 彳 彳 彳 彳 很 很 很



彳 + 艮 "to make a step with the left foot" + phonetic element



half of a crossroad

不



一 丿 丿 不



the stem of a flower

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. 1. 1 In Chinese, the words that show appreciation of somebody or something's qualities (e. g. "to be big", "to be difficult", "to be friendly"...) are all complete verbs on their own.

They can be called *verbs of appreciation*, *qualifying verbs* or *adjectival verbs*.

E. g. 中国大, 日本小。 China is big, Japan is small.

1. 2 These qualifying verbs also convey a relative sense. 大, in fact, means to be relatively big, i. e. to be big in relation to other things.

2. If one wants to appreciate or qualify something in a more concrete way (China is big in its own right, not just compared to Japan) then the adverb 很 can be used to cancel the relative sense of a qualifying verb. An adverb which modifies a verb is always placed in front of it.

E. g. 中国很大。
日本很小。

3. 3. 1 The *interrogative particle* 吗 is used to form simple questions. It is placed at the end of the sentence.

E. g. 中国很大吗?

3. 2 The word order for a question is the same as for a statement. The particle is not used when there is another interrogative word in the sentence.

E. g. 中国很大。
中国很大吗?

APPLICATIONS

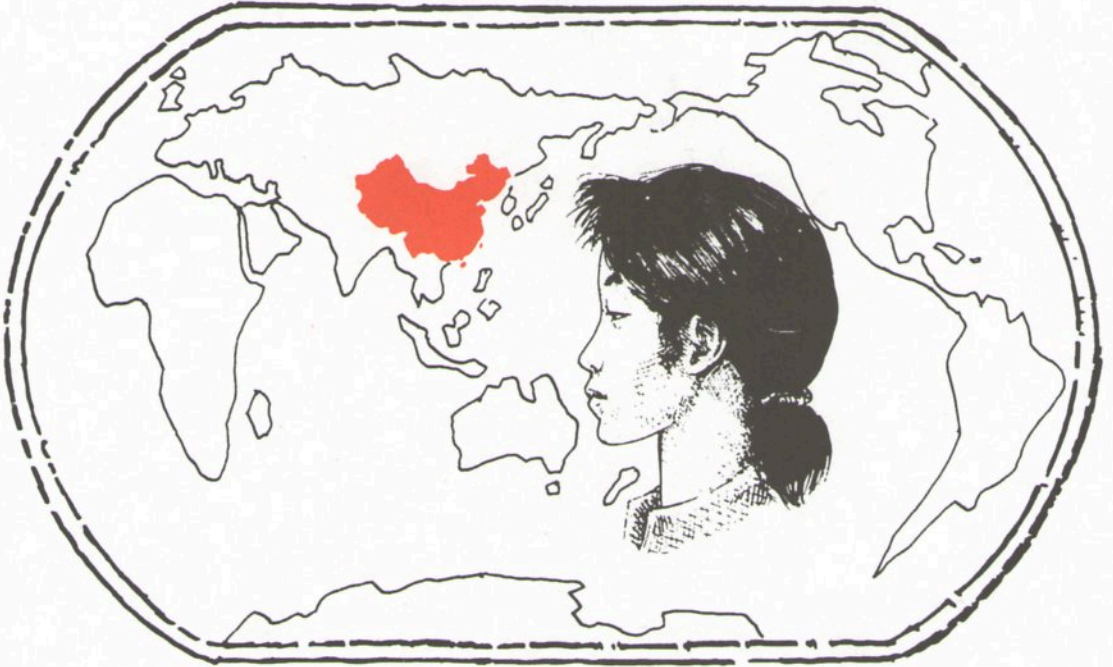
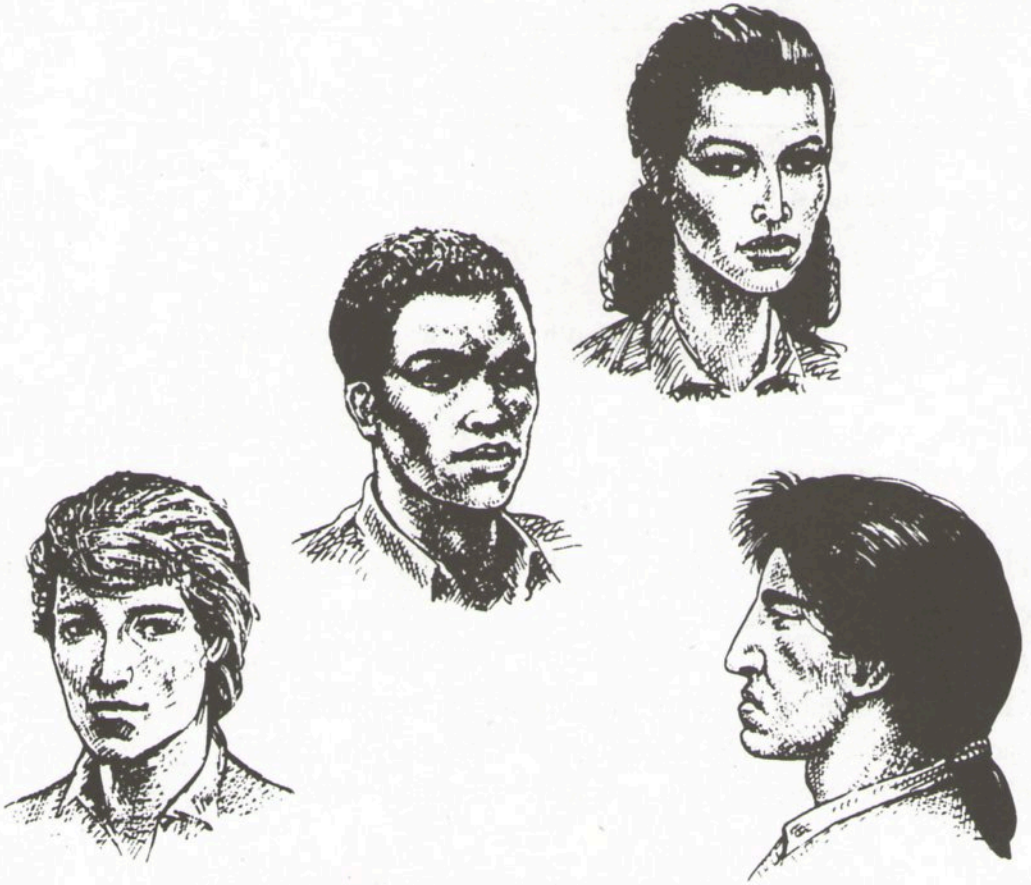
中国大吗?
中国很大?

日本	大	不大
中国	小	不小
日本	小	很小

CIVILISATION

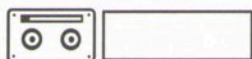
- China is the most heavily populated country in the world. It has 1.2 billion inhabitants.
- The area of China is seventeen and a half times greater than France.
- Imagine a country extending from north to south from Denmark to Niger and from east to west from the Ural Mountains to the Brittany coast. . . .
- Half of China is situated at more than two thousand kilometres from the Pacific or Indian Oceans.
- China is a country of every imaginable contrast: deserts, Himalayan peaks, paddies, tropical climates and Siberian cold. . . More than fifty ethnic groups, different languages and writing systems are found within its borders.
- China is a civilisation that has fascinated the West ever since the vogue for Chinese silk during the Roman Empire.







第 0,5 课 你是哪国人?



李：你是哪国人？

田：我是法国人。

李：他们也是法国人吗？

田：不是，他们是美国人。

李：小王是日本人吗？

田：不是。小王是中国人，小马是日本人。

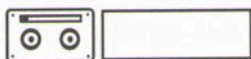


我是法国人，他们是美国人。小王、小马不是美国人。小王是中国人，小马是日本人。



我是法国人，他们是美国人。
小王、小马不是美国人。小王是中国人，
小马是日本人。

NEW WORDS



PRONOUNS

你	nǐ	you
我	wǒ	I
他们	tāmen	they

NOUNS

人	rén	man, person
法国人	Fǎguórén	a French person
美国人	Měiguórén	an American person
日本人	Rìběnrén	a Japanese person
中国人	Zhōngguórén	a Chinese person
李	Lǐ	[surname]
田	Tián	[surname]

ADVERB

也	yě	also
---	----	------

VERB

是	shì	to be; That's right!
---	-----	----------------------

INTERROGATIVE

哪	nǎ	which? what...?
---	----	-----------------

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

你	nǐ	you	你们
是	shì	to be; That's right!	是不是? 是吗?
哪	nǎ	which...? what...?	
人	rén	man, person	人人, 大人, 小人
李	lǐ	plum, [surname]	小李
田	tián	field, [surname]	小田
我	wǒ	I, me	我们, 我国
法	fǎ	law, method	法中, 中法
也	yě	also, as well	
他	tā	he, him	
们	men	[plural suffix]	我们, 你们, 人们
美	měi	beautiful, to be beautiful	美人

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

你



你你你你你你



亻 + 尔

person radical + "you" (arch.)



人 爾

a person and a decorated wine glass

是



是是是是是是是



日 + 正

"sun" + "straight, fair, correct"



是

a foot facing straight ahead, what is *correct* under the sun

哪



哪哪哪哪哪哪哪



口 + 那

"mouth" + "that" (town radical)



人



人



人

a *person* standing up in profile, the arms hanging to the left

李



李李李李李李李



木 + 子

"tree" + "child"



李

"a child", fruit of a tree

田



田田田田田田田



田

a *field* with its dividing paths, north-south, east-west

我



一 扌 戈 我 我 我



一 + 扌 + 戈 a stroke + the hand radical + "dagger-axe", halberd



戛

a type of large axe (a weapon or an agricultural tool?)

法



氵 去 法 法



氵 + 去 water radical + "to go"



涖

a water's course and a person leaving a place

也



勹 也 也



也

a viper

他



亻 也 他 他



亻 + 也 person radical + "also"

们 們



亻 们 们



亻 + 们 person radical + "door"



们

a double door

美



羊 大 美 美



羊 + 大 "sheep" + "big"



美

a person wearing a sheep mask

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The verb 是 shì “to be” has a far more restricted usage than in English. In general it is not used to qualify a word (see S. 0) nor is it used to mean “to be in/at a place”.

E. g. 我是法国人。
他们是美国人。

2. 哪 nǎ like all adjectives or interrogative pronouns is put in the same place where the question’s answer would be.

E. g. 你是哪国人？
我是法国人。

3. The adverb 也 yě must be placed before the verb that it modifies. It cannot be used without the word on which it depends.

E. g. 他也是中国人。 He is Chinese too.
小王也是。 Little Wang as well.

4. 们 mén is a suffix mainly used to form the plural personal pronouns.

E. g. 我们
你们
他们

APPLICATIONS

你是哪国人?
我是法国人。

我
他
我们
你们
他们
小王
小马

中国人
日本人
美国人
法国人
美国人
中国人
日本人

他们也是法国人吗?
他们不是法国人。

你
他
你们
小王
小马

美国人
中国人
日本人
法国人
中国人

CIVILISATION

- As a general rule there are two ways of forming the name of a foreign country in Chinese.

>> The word “country” (国 guó) is added to a character whose pronunciation is similar to the name of the country concerned.

法国 Fǎguó: France

英国 Yīngguó: England (Britain)

德国 Déguó: Germany

美国 Měiguó: America (U. S. A.)

>> A purely phonetic translation is used: that is, the sound of a foreign country's name is transcribed using Chinese characters chosen for their phonetic value.

意大利 Yìdàlì: Italy

肯尼亚 Kěnníyà: Kenya

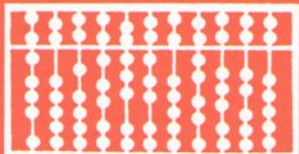
西班牙 Xībānyá: Spain

印度 Yīndù: India

- The familiar and friendly way to address someone is by using his family name preceded by 老 lǎo (“Old”), 小 xiǎo (“Little”) or 大 dà (“Big”). This means, that first names are rarely used.
- Children usually address adults as 叔叔 shūshu (“Mister”, lit. “Uncle”) or 阿姨 āyí (“Lady”, lit. “Aunty”).
- In a more general situation it is usual to address someone by using his surname followed by his social function or his social title.

王老师 Wáng lǎoshī: “Teacher Wang”

赵师傅 Zhào shīfu: “Master Worker Zhao” (to a worker or a driver, etc.)

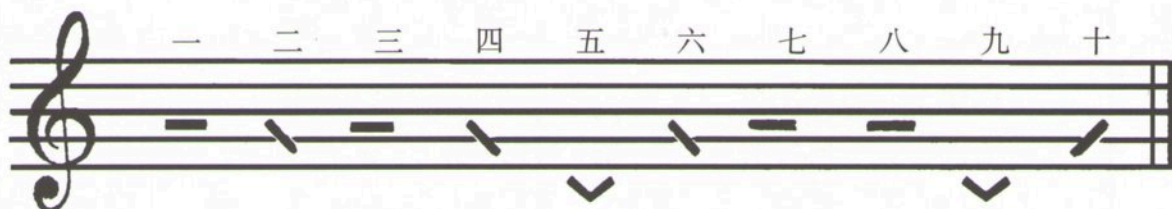


NUMBERS AND DATES

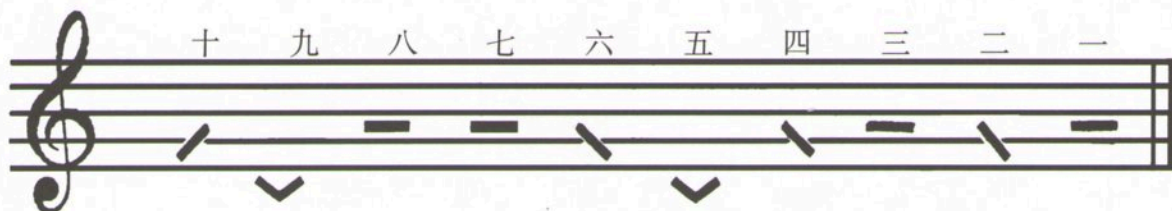


■ NUMBERS

The correct pronunciation of the numbers is very important. To learn them in the form of a rhyme helps in mastering the tones



To know numbers well is not only to be able to count rapidly from one to ten but also from ten to one.



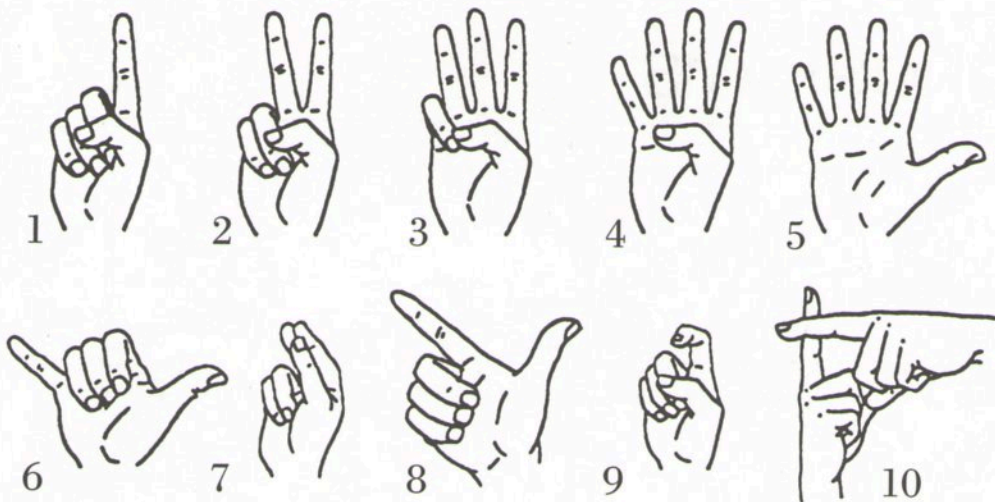
一	yī	one	十	shí	ten
二	èr	two	0	líng	zero
三	sān	three	零	líng	zero
四	sì	four	两	liǎng	two
五	wǔ	five	百	bǎi	one hundred
六	liù	six	千	qiān	one thousand
七	qī	seven	万	wàn	ten thousand
八	bā	eight	第	dì	[ordinal prefix]
九	jiǔ	nine			... st, ... nd, ... rd, etc.

■ NUMBER EXERCISES



11	十一	90	九十
12	十二	99	九十九
13	十三	100	一百
14	十四	101	一百零一
15	十五	112	一百一十二
16	十六	199	一百九十九
17	十七	200	二百
18	十八	300	三百
19	十九	999	九百九十九
20	二十	1000	一千
21	二十一	1001	一千零一
22	二十二	1010	一千零一十
30	三十	1111	一千一百一十一
40	四十	1203	一千二百零三
50	五十	2000	两千
60	六十	3000	三千
70	七十	9999	九千九百九十九
80	八十	10000	一万

10, 100	一万零一百
2, 310, 654	二百三十一万零六百五十四
45, 986, 721	四千五百九十八万六千七百二十一
first	第一
second	第二
tenth	第十



■ DATE



年	nián	year
月	yuè	month
日	rì	day
星期	xīngqī	week

■ DATE EXERCISES



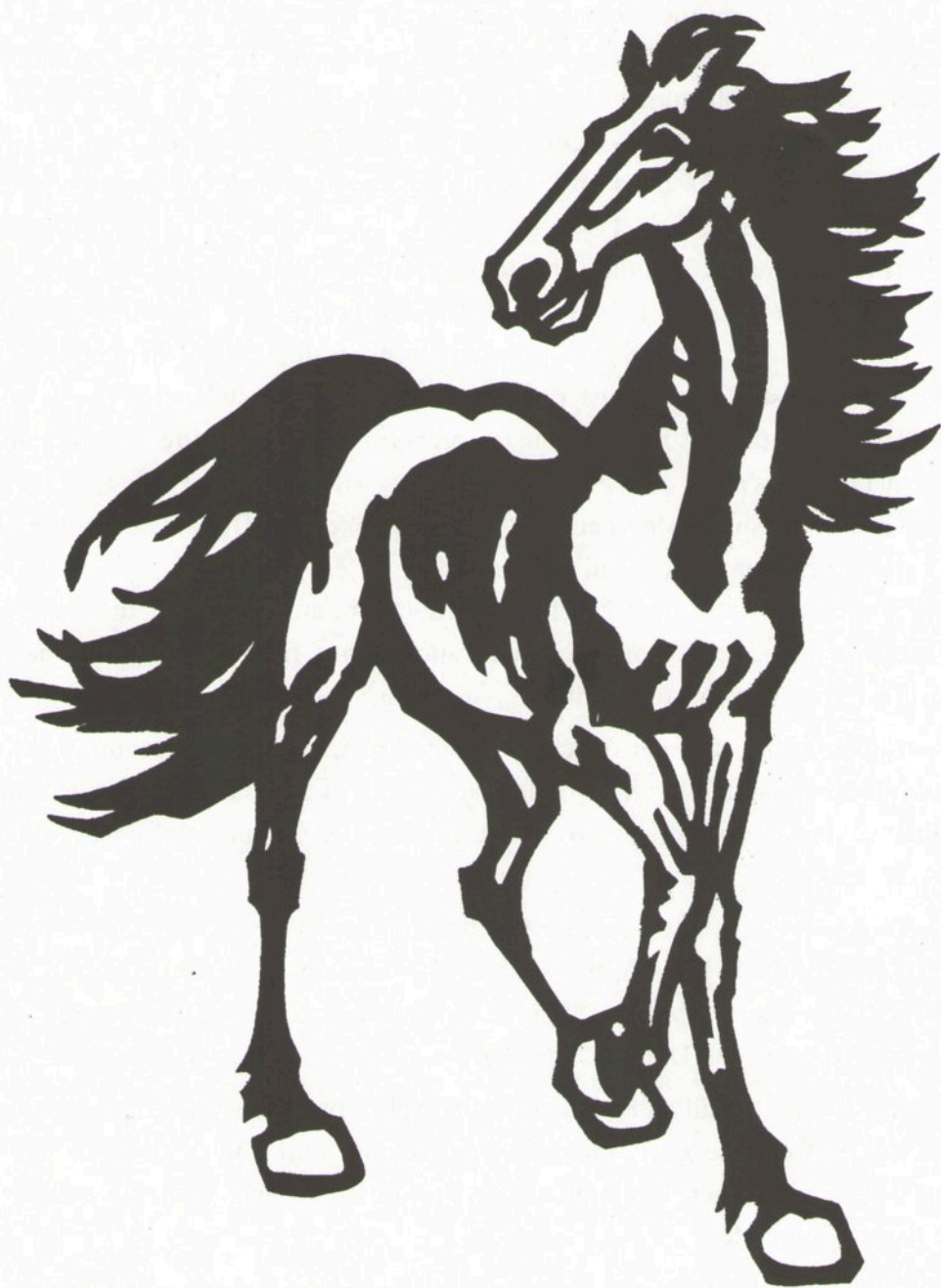
January	一月	July	七月
February	二月	August	八月
March	三月	September	九月
April	四月	October	十月
May	五月	November	十一月
June	六月	December	十二月

5th September 1989	一九八九年九月五日
14th July 1789	一七八九年七月十四日
18th June 1940	一九四零年六月十八日
11th August 1947	一九四七年八月十一日

Monday	星期一	Friday	星期五
Tuesday	星期二	Saturday	星期六
Wednesday	星期三	Sunday	星期日
Thursday	星期四	Sunday	星期天

CIVILISATION

- Throughout history the Chinese have always seen numbers as signs of almost magical significance. Numbers can allow ideas to be “fixed” and can be used to designate certain phenomena or certain realities.
 - >> The three schools of thought (Confucianism, Buddhism and Daoism)
 - >> The three wishes of plenty (plenty of happiness, plenty of long years and plenty of sons)
 - >> The four classes (scholars, peasants, craftsmen and merchants)
 - >> The five relationships (sovereign/subject, father/son, husband/wife, the eldest child/the youngest child and the relationship between friends)
 - >> The six tastes (bitter, sweet, sour, acrid, salty and tasteless)
 - >> The six arts (propriety, music, archery, chariot-driving, calligraphy and mathematics)
 - >> The six gossipers (the dentist, the matchmaker, the Buddhist nun, the fortune teller, the bone-setter and the midwife)
 - >> The nine ancient punishments (red hot iron, amputation of the nose, amputation of the feet, banishment, castration, death, fine, whipping and beating)
 - >> The seventy-two professions. . .
- Even though the calendar officially adopted in China is the Gregorian calendar, a traditional, essentially lunar calendar is still in use. It is the only important calendar that is not concerned with a point of origin, namely, an eventual year one.
- There is a cycle of twelve years (within a larger cycle of sixty): the year of the Rat (e. g. 1900, 1912. . .), the year of the Buffalo (e. g. 1901, 1913), the year of the Tiger, the Rabbit, the Dragon, the Snake, the Horse, the Sheep, the Monkey, the Rooster, the Dog and the Pig.
- A day is traditionally divided up into twelve parts. The first part, the hour of the Rat, is from eleven o’clock in the evening until one o’clock in the morning. The second hour, the hour of the Buffalo is between one and three o’clock in the morning, etc.
- The important festivals are Chinese New Year also known as the Spring Festival, which occurs around February with its New Year pictures, couplets, its ravioli and its fire crackers, the Lantern Festival (fifteen days later), the Day of the Dead (4th April), the Dragon Boat Festival (June), the Mid Autumn Festival (September) and the national holiday (1st October).



PART 1

Sequences

1. 1 People

1. 2 Studies

1. 25 Studies

1. 3 China

“Snowball” Version 1

1. 4 The House

1. 5 Shopping

1. 6 Transport

“Snowball” Version 2





SEQUENCE 1.1

第1课 您贵姓?



- 田立阳：您贵姓？
王月文：我姓王。
田立阳：你叫什么名字？
王月文：我叫王月文。
田立阳：他姓什么？
王月文：他姓马。
田立阳：他是不是中国人？
王月文：不是，他是法国人。
田立阳：他去哪儿？
王月文：他去中国。

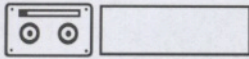


我姓王，叫王月文。我不是法国人，是中国人。我去北京 (Běijīng)。



我姓王，叫王月文。我不是法国人，
是中国人。我去北京。

NEW WORDS



PRONOUNS

您	nín	you [polite form]
他	tā	he

NOUNS

名字	míngzi	name
立阳	Lìyáng	[given name]
月文	Yuèwén	[given name]

VERBS

姓	xìng	to be called (surname)
叫	jiào	to be called (given name and surname)
去	qù	to go

INTERROGATIVE

贵姓	guìxìng	What is your surname? [polite expression]
什么	shénme	what?
哪儿	nǎr	where?

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

您	nín	you, your [polite form]	
贵	guì	honourable [polite qualifier], expensive	不贵, 很贵, 贵国
姓	xìng	surname, to be called	姓名
立	lì	to stand, to construct	中立, 中立国
阳	yáng	sunny side of a hill, sun	
月	yuè	moon, month	月中, 一月, 二月, 本月
文	wén	(written) language, culture	文人, 文法, 法文, 中文
叫	jiào	to be called, to call (name)	
什	shén	see 什么	
么	me	see 什么	
名	míng	name	名人
字	zì	Chinese character	文字, 十字, 八字
去	qù	to go (to)	去年
儿	ér	child [phonetic suffix]	
	-r		名儿, 姓儿, 文儿, 字儿

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

您



你你您您您



你 + 心

“you” + “heart”



a heart

贵

贵



中虫中贵贵贵



中 + 一 + 贝

“middle” + “one” + “seashell”



a bag filled with shells, symbol of wealth

姓

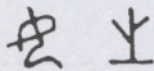


女女女女女姓姓



女 + 生

“woman” + “to be born, to give birth to”



a woman, the hands joined, one leg bent and a new shoot

立



人 一 一 一 立



a person standing on the ground

阳

阳



了 卩 阳 阳 阳 阳



卩 + 日

mound radical + “sun”



sun rays on the side of a hill

月



月 月 月 月



a crescent moon

文



一 一 一 文

tattoos on the chest

叫



口 + 叫

口 叫 叫

“mouth” + phonetic element

什



亻 + 十



person radical + “ten”

a squadron of ten soldiers

么 麼



一 + 厶

一 么 么

a stroke + private radical

名



夕 + 口



夕 夕 名

“twilight” + “mouth”

what one says at night to be recognised

字



宀 + 子



宀 宀 字 字

roof radical + “child”

a child at home, fed, educated. . .

去



土 + 厶



“earth” + private radical

a person leaving a place

儿 兒



儿 儿

a child, its legs and the unclosed fontanelle

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. Besides using the final particle 吗 *ma*, an interrogative sentence can also be formed in alternative ways, e. g. Vb + neg + Vb or QVb + neg + QVb.

E. g. 他是不是中国人? 他叫不叫王月文?
你姓不姓马? 中国大不大?
你去不去中国?

APPLICATIONS

您贵姓?

我姓王。

田

马

你叫什么名字?

我叫王月文。

他

田立阳

您

王月文

他姓什么?

他姓马。

你

王

您

李

他是不是中国人?

他不是中国人。

你

法国人

您

美国人

你们

日本人

他们

中国人

你姓不姓马?

我姓马。

叫不叫

田立阳

去不去

中国

姓不姓

王

他去哪儿?

他去中国。

你

美国

你们

日本

他们

中国

小马

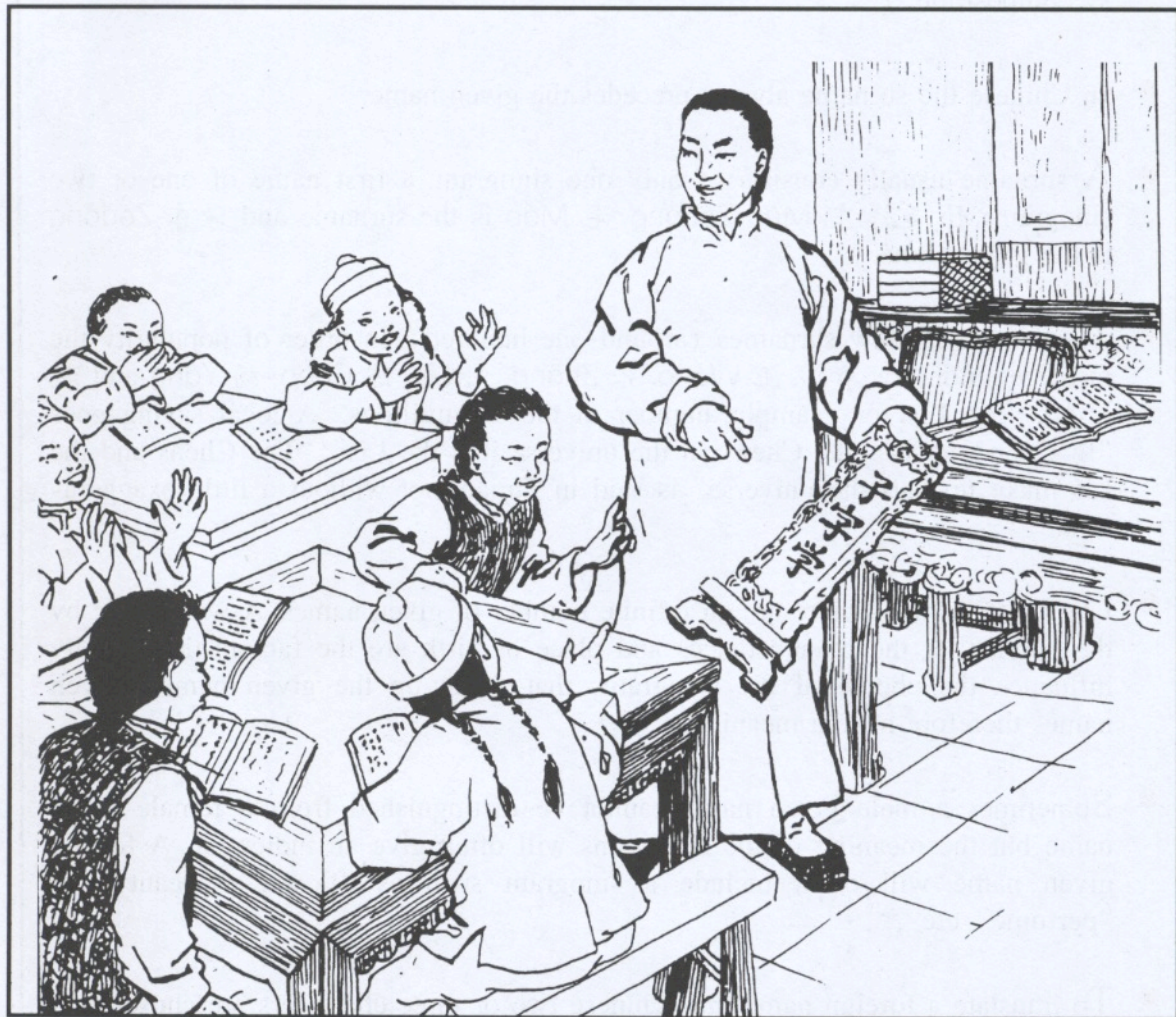
法国

小王

日本

CIVILISATION

- Traditional Chinese courtesy requires that the person being addressed is praised: e. g. 贵姓 guìxìng “your surname” (lit. “your honourable surname”). On the contrary the speaker will belittle him or herself: e. g. 敝姓 bìxìng “my surname” (lit. “my dishonourable surname”), 拙著 zhuōzhù “my work” (lit. “my clumsy composition”).
- In Chinese the surname always precedes the given name.
- A surname usually consists of only one sinogram, a first name of one or two sinograms. In 毛泽东 Máo Zédōng, 毛 Máo is the surname and 泽东 Zédōng is the given name.
- There are very few surnames (around one hundred). In order of popularity the most common are 李 Lǐ, 王 Wáng, 张 Zhāng, 刘 Liú, 陈 Chén, 杨 Yáng and 赵 Zhào. The Lis for example, number in the ten millions. A local saying goes “In Guandong it’s the Chens, in the universe it’s the Lis”. “The Chens and the Lis make up half the universe” is said in Fujian, not without a little exaggeration.
- On the other hand there are an infinite number of given names. A wish made by the parents, or the circumstances and place of birth are the factors that usually influence the choice of the sinograms that make up the given name. Given names therefore have a meaning.
- Sometimes a male given name cannot be distinguished from a female given name but the meaning of the sinograms will often give an indication. A female given name will often include a sinogram such as “flower”, “beauty” or “perfume”, etc.
- To translate a foreign name into Chinese two or three characters are chosen that more or less transcribe the name phonetically:
 - ›› Nonetheless one would look at the meaning of the characters in the given name.
 - ›› If possible one would attempt to make the first character (as it would be considered to be the surname) an already existing Chinese surname.
 - ›› De Gaulle: 戴高乐 Dài GāoLè (gāo: tall, lè: happy).



第2课 你学什么?



- 田：小王，这是谁的书？
 王：这是我的书。
 田：那是老师的书吗？
 王：不是老师的，是马冬的。
 田：哦！马冬学中文吗？
 王：是的，他学中文。
 田：他是谁的学生？
 王：王老师的学生。
 田：你学什么？
 王：我学法文。

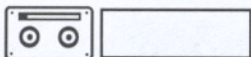


马冬是王老师的学生。他学中文。这是他的书。我不学中文，我学法文。



马冬是王老师的学生。他学中文。
 这是他的书。我不学中文，我学法文。

NEW WORDS



PRONOUNS

这	zhè	this
那	nà	that

NOUNS

书	shū	book
老师	lǎoshī	teacher
学生	xuésheng	student
中文	Zhōngwén	the Chinese language
法文	Fǎwén	the French language
冬	Dōng	[given name]

VERB

学	xué	to study
---	-----	----------

GRAMMATICAL WORD

的	de	[determining particle]
---	----	------------------------

PARTICLE

哦	ò	Oh?
---	---	-----

INTERROGATIVE

谁	shéi	who?
---	------	------

EXPRESSION

是的	shìde	That's right.
----	-------	---------------


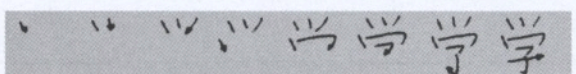
SINOGRAMS


PRESENTATION



学	xué	to study; studies, school	学年, 学期, 小学, 中学, 大学, 法学, 美学, 文学, 文字学
这	zhè	this	这儿, 这么
谁	shéi	who?	谁的
的	de	[determining particle]	我的, 你们的
书	shū	book; to write	书法, 小人书, 中文书
那	nà	that	那儿, 那么
老	lǎo	old, to be old, always	老人, 老大, 老二, 老王, 老年, 老百姓
师	shī	master	大师
冬	dōng	winter	立冬
哦	ò	[exclamatory particle showing doubt or surprise]	
生	shēng	to be born	生日, 生字, 小学生, 中学生, 大学生, 师生


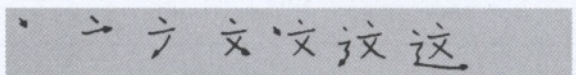
SINOGRAMS


MEMORY TECHNIQUE



学 學  


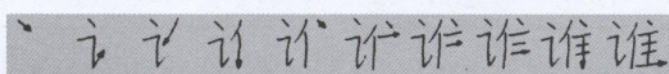
 子 + 子 3-stroke roof radical + "child"


  a child receiving signs passed down by two hands



这 這  


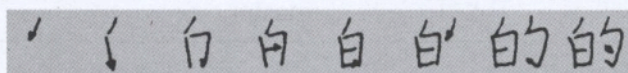
 文 + 辶 "language" + walking radical


 之  a foot



谁 誰  


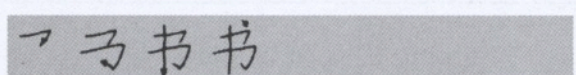
 讠 + 隹 word radical + "short tailed bird"



  the tongue and a bird with its plumage

的  

 白 + 勺 "white" + "spoon"

  grain of rice? finger nail? sun? flame?
勺 a spoon and its contents

书 書  

  a hand holding a brush above a space

那



了 习 习 月 那 那



邑

town radical



𠂔

a people who wear furs, living *over there* on the western boundaries of China

老



一 十 土 𠂔 老 老



𠂔 + 匕

old age radical + upside down person radical



耂

a person with long hair leaning on a cane

师

師



巾 巾 巾 师 师



巾

“cloth”



帀

a banner, symbol of authority, on the ramparts

冬



夕 夕 冬 冬



夂 + 冫

foot radical reversed + ice radical (frozen water)



夂

the knotted end of a thread skein and ice: *winter*

哦



口 + 我

“mouth” + “I”

生



生

vegetation springing up from the earth

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

I. The determining particle 的 de

1.1 The determining particle 的 de is the most common sinogram in modern Chinese.

1.2 It is used with noun phrases.

1.3 It attaches information to the nouns placed after it.

E. g.	学生的	书	the student's book
	老师的	马	the teacher's horse
	他的	姓	his surname

1.4 The noun can be understood.

E. g.	学生的	the student's
	我的	mine

1.5 The 的 de particle must not be used when the noun and the information that describes it form a word, an entirety or a category.

E. g.	法国人	the French
	中文书	Chinese books

APPLICATIONS

这是谁的书?
这是我的书。

那	他的
这	你的
那	老师的
这	马冬的
那	学生们的
这	小王的

那是老师的书吗?
那不是老师的。

这	学生
那	你
这	小马

他是谁的学生?
他是王老师的学生。

你	老师	马冬
你们	学生	田老师
小王	老师	他
马冬	学生	李老师

你学什么?
我学法文。

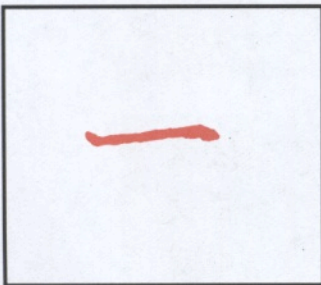
他	中文
他们	日文
你们	法文

马冬学中文吗?
他学中文。

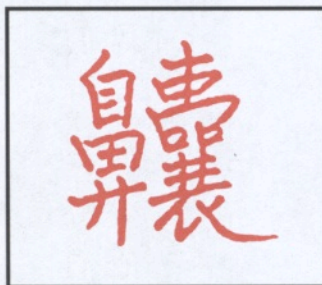
你	法文
小田	日文
他们	中文

CIVILISATION

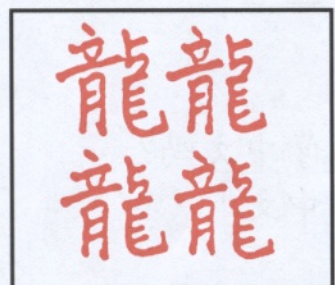
- The famous 康熙字典 Kāngxī Zìdiǎn *Kangxi Dictionary*, written in the Qing Dynasty, comprised 47,035 characters. A very recent dictionary 汉语大字典 Hànyǔ Dàzìdiǎn included 56,000 characters. These two dictionaries, in fact, consider the different ways of writing a character through the course of history as different characters.
- The total number of really different characters is most likely to be around 20,000.
- Chinese printing presses usually have between 7,000 and 10,000 characters at their disposal.
- The length of a book is judged by its total number of characters and not by the number of pages it has.
- For example, the five volumes of the *Selected Works of Mao Zedong* include a total of 913,000 characters. These volumes are composed of 3,316 different characters.
- The average number of strokes that make up a character is 9.8.
- The character with the fewest strokes is yī “one” with only one stroke. At the other end of the scale the character zhé “to chat” with 64 strokes disappeared around the 5th century AD. Today, the prize goes to nòng “to have a stuffed-up nose” with a mere 36 strokes.



yī



nòng



zhé

TRY SAYING THIS QUICKLY...

十四不是四十四，是不是？

木	木	木	木	
月	月	月	月	
女	女	女	女	
口	口	口	口	
山	山	山	山	
马	马	马	马	馬
子	子	子	子	
妈	妈	妈	妈	媽
好	好	好	好	
国	国	国	国	國

人
从
众

雨
雪

第 2,5 课 你汉语说得怎么样?



田：你学外语吗？

王：我学外语。你说汉语吗？

田：我说汉语。他呢？

王：他也说汉语，我们都说汉语。

田：他汉语说得怎么样？

王：说得很好。

田：你呢？

王：我说得不好。

田：你汉字写得好不好？

王：写得很好。

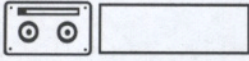


我们都学外语。我学汉语，他学法语。我汉语说得很好，汉字写得不好。他法语说得很好，法文写得也很好。



我们都学外语。我学汉语，他学法语。我汉语说得很好，汉字写得不好。他法语说得很好，法文写得也很好。

NEW WORDS



NOUNS

汉语	Hànyǔ	Chinese language
外语	wàiyǔ	a foreign language
汉字	Hànzì	Chinese character (sinogram)

ADVERB

都	dōu	all
---	-----	-----

VERBS

说	shuō	to speak
写	xiě	to write

QUALIFYING VERB

好	hǎo	good, to be good
---	-----	------------------

GRAMMATICAL WORD

得	de	[verbal suffix of appreciation]
---	----	---------------------------------

INTERROGATIVE

怎么样	zěnmeyàng	how? How is...?
呢	ne	[final interrogative particle]

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

汉	hàn	Chinese, Han	汉人, 汉学, 汉文, 大汉
语	yǔ	language	语法, 语文, 法语, 国语
说	shuō	to speak, to say	说法, 小说, 好说, 不好说, 学说
得	de	[verbal suffix of appreciation]	
	dé	to obtain	
怎	zěn	see 怎么样	怎么, 怎样, 不怎么样
样	yàng	type, manner, model	样本, 一样, 不一样, 这样, 那样, 字样
外	wài	exterior, outside	外国, 外文, 国外, 中外, 老外
都	dōu	all	都不, 不都
好	hǎo	good, to be good, well	好学, 好写, 好不好?
	hào	to love, to like	
呢	ne	[final interrogative particle]	
写	xiě	to write	写字, 书写

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

汉 漢



灬 冫 汉



冫 + 又

water radical + "again" (right hand radical)



又



the right hand

语 語



讠 讠 讠 讠 语 语



讠 + 五 + 口

word radical + "five" + "mouth"

说 說



讠 讠 讠 讠 说 说 说



讠 + 讠 + 兄

word radical + older brother (abbr. 兄)



words and a person with his mouth open... *saying*
words (role of the elder brother in ritual ceremonies)

得



彳 彳 彳 彳 得 得 得 得



彳 + 日 + 一 + 寸

"step with left foot" + "sun" + "one" + "thumb"



a hand picking up a shell on the road (*to obtain*)

怎



冫 冫 冫 冫 怎 怎 怎



冫 + 心

collar radical + "heart"



the collar of a piece of clothing and a heart

样 樣



木 木 木 木 样 样



木 + 羊

“tree” + “sheep”



a ram and its horns



外



夕 夕 夕 夕 外 外



夕 + 卜

“twilight” + “divination”



to observe divination cracks in anticipation of nightfall
(when one spends the night *outdoors*)

都



尹 + 日 + 阝

old age radical + “sun” + town radical

好



女 + 子

“woman” + “child”



a woman and her child

呢



口 口 口 口 呢 呢



口 + 尼

“mouth” + phonetic element

写 寫



一 冫 冫 写 写



一 + 与

two-stroke roof radical + “and”

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. 1.1 都 dōu is an adverb that refers to a whole group already mentioned or implied. Like all adverbs it modifies a verb and is placed before it.

E. g. 我们都是法国人。 We/all/are French.
学生都学中文。 The students/all/study Chinese.

1. 2 There is a logical distinction between 都 dōu + 不 bù + Vb and 不 bù + 都 dōu + Vb: in the first case it is the verb that is negated and in the second case it is dōu.

E. g. 他们都不是法国人。 They/all/are not French.
None of them are French.
他们不都是法国人。 They/not all/are French.
They are not all French.

2. The interrogative particle 呢 ne is used to create a new question.

E. g. 法国呢? And (what about) France?
他呢? And (what about) him?

3. The adverb of appreciation or complement of degree.

3.1 This adverb is used to express the appreciation (the degree) of an action. This construction can be used to translate sentences such as “he studies well”, “children don’t eat very much” and “he speaks Chinese very quickly”.

3.2 The adverb of appreciation is placed after the verb and is joined to it by the verbal suffix 得 de.

3.3 The following rule is used when the verb has an object: the verbal suffix 得 is attached to the verb and is only used to qualify it.

E. g. 你汉语说得怎么样?
汉语你说得怎么样?
你说汉语说得怎么样?

3.4 The verb can also be qualified in a negative way. The negation is logically placed together with the qualifying word or phrase. In the sentence “Little Wang doesn’t study well” it’s the “well” that is negated (Little Wang still studies).

E. g. 小王学得不好。

APPLICATIONS

你学外语吗?
我学外语。

他	说	法语
小马	学	中文
老师	说	汉语
你们	学	日文

他也说汉语吗?
他也说汉语。

你	也	学
小王	也	说
他们	都	学
你们	都	说

他汉语说得怎么样?
他汉语说得很好。

法语	学	好不好
日语	说	怎么样
汉字	写	好不好
汉语	学	怎么样
法文	写	好不好
日文	学	怎么样

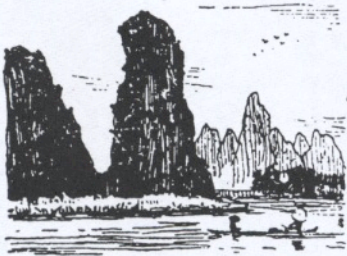
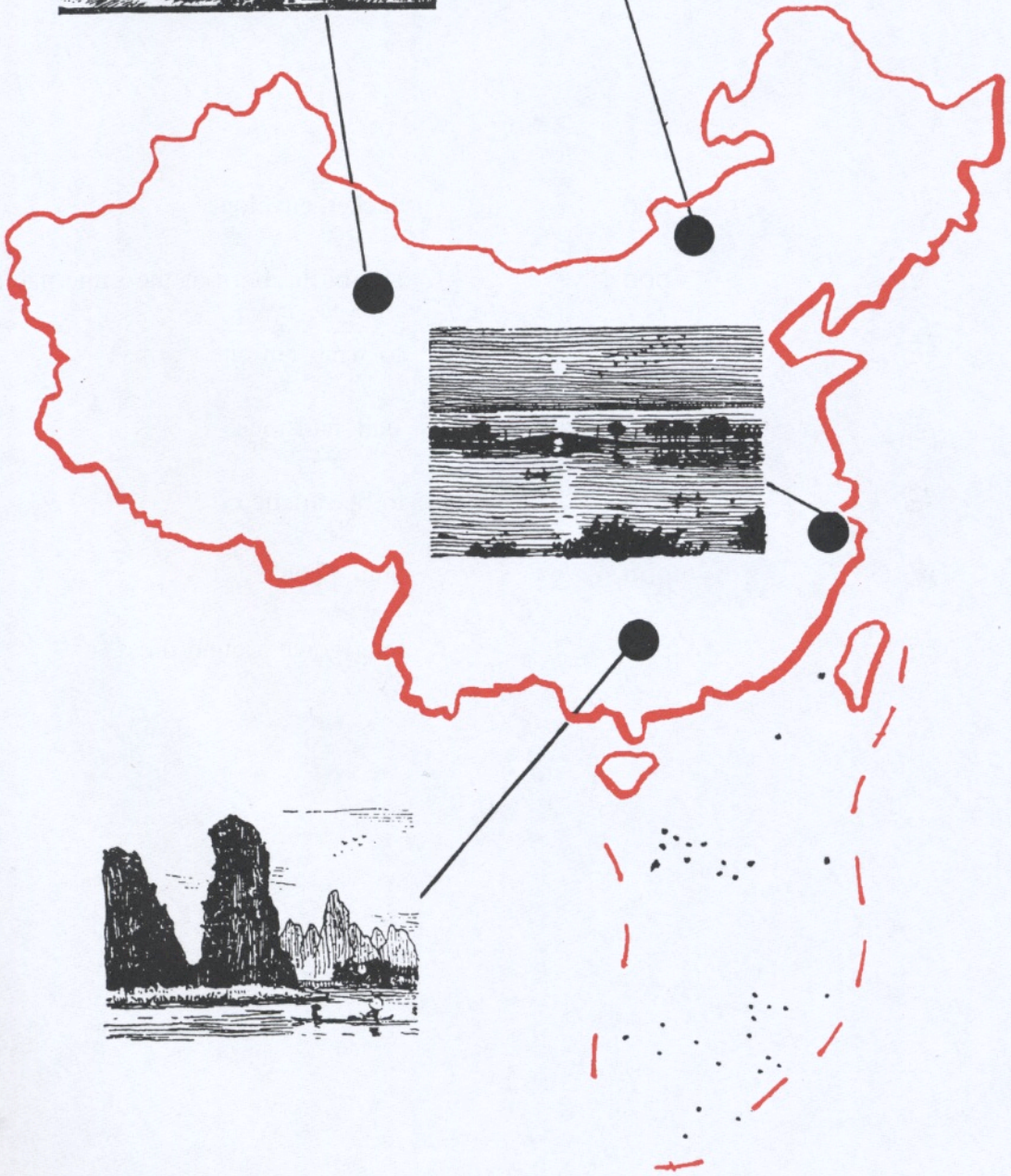
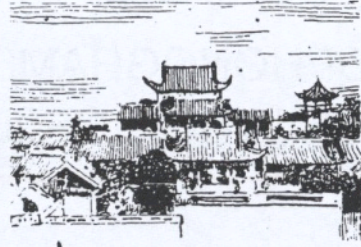
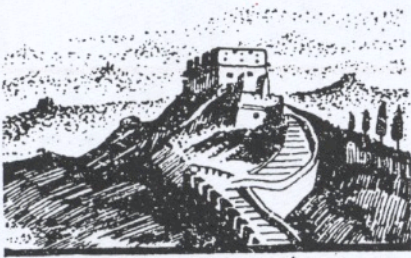
CIVILISATION

- A language echoes its surroundings. It is a mirror of its environment, its culture, its mentality. In this way, in Chinese
 - >> The word “country”, 国家 guójiā, is composed of two sinograms, “country” and “family”.
 - >> This word by itself covers both the concepts of “country” and “the state”.
 - >> A single sinogram 崩 bēng means “to die” when referring to an emperor.
 - >> A single sinogram 涮 shuàn means “to cook fine strips of meat by dipping them in a boiling stock”... at least that is in front of the consumer (another verb signifies the same action but performed in the kitchen!).
 - >> A single character 孝 xiào signifies “the respect and obedience that must be given to parents, elder brothers and sisters and superiors”.
 - >> The word rice is 米饭 mǐfàn when it is cooked. 大米 dànmǐ in the raw state and 水稻 shuǐdào when it is still in the paddy-field.
 - >> On the other hand the Chinese have no word for “logic” or “humour” and were obliged to borrow these words by using a phonetic transcription (逻辑 luójí, 幽默 yōumò).
- There are seven major dialects of Chinese. Among them, northern Chinese, Mandarin, has become the common language, the standard. The differences between the dialects are grammatical, lexical and they are especially noticeable in the area of pronunciation. A Chinese from the North cannot understand a person from Canton or a Cantonese speaker from Hong Kong. The writing, however, remains the same.
- The words designating foreign languages are generally based on the name of the country to which the characters 语 yǔ or 文 wén (“language”) is added.

英文	Yīngwén	English
德文	Déwén	German
西班牙文	Xībānyáwén	Spanish
意大利文	Yìdàlìwén	Italian
阿拉伯文	Ālābówén	Arabic
俄文	Éwén	Russian
拉丁文	Lādīngwén	Latin
希腊文	Xīlàwén	Greek
希伯来文	Xībóláiwén	Hebrew
葡萄牙文	Pútáoyáwén	Portuguese

IDEOPHONOGRAMS CAN ALSO BE THE ASSOCIATION OF IDEAS...

包	bāo	packet, envelope
胞	bāo	afterbirth, born of the same parents
抱	bào	to wrap (in one's arms)
雹	báo	hail, hailstone
饱	bǎo	to be satisfied
泡	pào	bulb, bubble
袍	páo	long gown around dress



第3课 你去过中国吗？



田：你说，中国大不大？

王：很大。

田：法国呢？

王：法国不大也不小。你看，这是中国地图。

田：日本在哪儿？

王：中国在这儿，日本在那儿。

田：你去过中国吗？

王：没去过。

田：你想去吗？

王：我很想去中国。

田：我想去北京、南京、山东、山西。

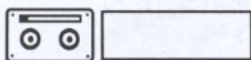


中国很大，法国不大也不小。我没去过中国。我很想去中国。我想去北京、南京、山东、山西。这是中国地图。北京在这儿，南京在那儿。



中国很大，法国不大也不小。我没去过中国。我很想去中国。我想去北京、南京、山东、山西。这是中国地图。北京在这儿，南京在那儿。

NEW WORDS



LOCATIVE WORDS

这儿	zhèr	here
那儿	nàr	there

NOUNS

地图	dìtú	map
北京	Běijīng	Beijing
南京	Nánjīng	Nanjing
山东	Shāndōng	Shandong Province
山西	Shānxī	Shanxi Province

NEGATION

没	méi	not; without
---	-----	--------------

VERBS

看	kàn	to see, to look at, to watch
在	zài	to be at. . . , to be in. . .
想	xiǎng	to think, to intend to. . .

GRAMMATICAL WORD

过	guo	[verbal suffix of past experience]
---	-----	------------------------------------


SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

过	guo	[verbal suffix of past experience]	
	guò	to go across	过去, 过年, 不好过
看	kàn	to see, to look at, to watch, to read	看书, 看法, 看看, 好看, 小看
地	dì	earth, soil, ground	地儿, 田地
图	tú	map, drawing	
在	zài	to be in, at	在家, 不在
没	méi	[negation of past experience]	没人, 没什么
想	xiǎng	to think, to think of, to want to	想法, 想一想
北	běi	north	东北
京	jīng	capital	北京人
南	nán	south	西南
山	shān	mountain	小山
东	dōng	east	东西, 东京, 中东
西	xī	west	西北, 西南

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

过 過  寸 + 辶 “thumb” + walking radical

看



一 二 三 手 目 看 看 看 看



手 + 目

“hand” + “eye”



看

a hand over the eye

地



一 十 土 地



土 + 也

“earth” + “also”



地

the *earth* (a menhir standing on the *ground*)
infested with vipers

图 圖





一 冂 图 图



冂 + 冬

wall radical + “winter”



图

the boundaries of administrative divisions

在



一 才 才 右 在 在



才 + 土

phonetic element + “earth”



在

an object stuck in the ground

没



一 冫 几 没 没




冫 + 几 + 又



water radical + “how many” + right hand radical



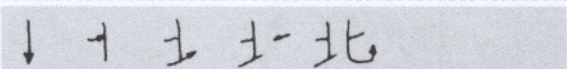




没


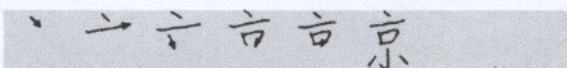

a whirlpool and a hand (to sink)


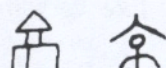
想  相 + 心 “to observe” (“mutual”) + “heart”


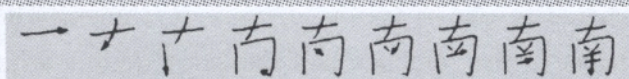
  to observe with the mind

北   匕 + 匕  graphic element + upside-down person radical



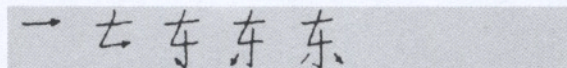


  two people back to back (the direction one's back is turned to)



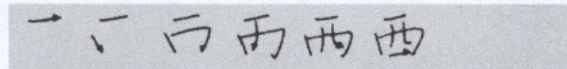
京    宀 + 口 + 小 graphic element + “mouth” + “small”

  elevated position to watch surroundings

南  

山     three mountain peaks 

东      the direction of the rising sun, behind trees

西    a bird in its nest

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The past experience aspect

- 1.1 In Chinese verbs do not have tenses, they have aspects. To indicate that one has already lived the experience of a certain action, that one has already done it at least once, the verbal suffix of past experience 过 guò is placed after the verb.

E. g. 我去过中国。

I've already been to China.

你学过汉语吗?

Have you studied Chinese before?

- 1.2 The negation of the past experience aspect is 没 méi or 没有 méiyǒu. The particle 过 guò is still placed after the verb.

E. g. 我没(有)去过中国。 I have never been to China.

2. 也不 yěbù: not either (also/not)

E. g. 我也不去。

I'm not going either.

3. In addition to adjectival verbs, 很 hěn can also qualify verbs of emotion.

E. g. 我很想去中国。

I would like very much to go to China.

4. There are two types of commas in Chinese. The normal comma which indicates a pause in the sentence and the semi-comma which indicates a short pause between two words or two groups of words.

E. g. 中国在这儿,日本在那儿。

我想去北京、南京、山东、山西。

APPLICATIONS

中国大不大?

中国很大。

法国

日本

美国

北京

南京

山西

这是什么地图?
这是中国地图。

那	法国
这	美国
那	日本
这	北京
那	南京
这	山东

日本在哪儿?
日本在这儿。

北京	那儿
南京	这儿
山西	那儿
山东	这儿

你去过中国吗?
我去过中国。

他	日本
你们	美国
她们	法国
小王	南京
你的老师	北京

你学过中文吗?
我没学过中文。

法文	法语
日文	日语
汉语	

你想去中国吗?
我很想去中国。

学中文
说汉语
看美国地图
去北京

CIVILISATION

- An essential piece of knowledge of The Middle Kingdom is to know how to place the provinces on a map of China. In fact, these provinces are often in the geographical, cultural and human scale of a country. The 新疆 Xinjiang Autonomous Region is three times larger than France and 四川 Sichuan Province has twice as many inhabitants as France.
- Knowing the meaning of some of the names of the provinces helps to locate them. For example, Xinjiang (“new frontiers”), on the western outskirts of China; 河北 Hebei (“north of the river”) and 河南 Henan (“south of the river”), on either side of the Yellow River; 山东 Shandong (“east of the mountains”) and 山西 Shanxi (“west of the mountains”), two provinces separated by a mountain range; 湖北 Hubei (“north of the lakes”) and 湖南 Hunan (“south of the lakes”), of which the common border area is a set of lakes.
- Every sinogram corresponds to just one syllable. Chinese is the language with the most homophones. In the same way the names of two provinces, which in fact are neighbouring provinces, are pronounced in the same way in a similar tone: 山西 Shānxī and 陕西 Shǎnxī.
- China has 23 provinces, five autonomous regions (内蒙古 Inner Mongolia, 广西 Guangxi, 西藏 Tibet, 宁夏 Ningxia and 新疆 Xinjiang), and the Special Administrative Region of 香港 Hong Kong.
- 上海 Shanghai, 北京 Beijing, 天津 Tianjin and 重庆 Chongqing are municipalities with a special status. The four largest cities in China are not part of any province.
- The rural population represents more or less 80% of China’s total population.
- Shortly before the beginning of our era, the term 国 guó replaced the word 邦 bāng to mean “country”. Indeed, the name of the founding emperor of the Han Dynasty 刘邦 Liu Bang included the character 邦 bāng, that character had become a taboo.

“SNOWBALL” VERSION 1



The “Snowball” Versions can be either used for translation, *pinyin* transcription or for dictation followed by an immediate oral repetition.

我的老师是中国的名人。他的书法很好，是文字学大师。他的老大是大学生，学文学，书法也很好。他的老二是中学生，书法不怎么样。没人说他汉字写得好看。不过，他的语文很好。他好看小人书、小说，汉语也说得很好。

在中国，小学生人人都学书法。我的看法是：中国书法好看，不好学。



第4课 你家有几口人?



田：你去哪儿？

王：我回家。

田：你家在北方吗？

王：不在北方，在南方，上海。

田：你家有几口人？

王：四口人。

田：有没有孩子？

王：有。两个，一个男孩儿，一个女孩儿。

田：你爱人在哪儿工作？

王：她在中学工作。

田：她作什么工作？

王：她是老师。

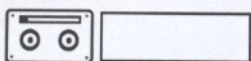


我中国人。我家在上海，有四口人。我有一个男孩儿，一个女孩儿。我是老师，我爱人也是老师。她在中学工作。



我是中国人。我家在上海，有四口人。
我有一个男孩儿，一个女孩儿。我是老师，
我爱人也是老师。她在中学工作。

NEW WORDS



MEASURE WORDS

口	kǒu	[Mw for number of family members]
个	gè	[Mw for individuals]

PRONOUN

她	tā	she
---	----	-----

NOUNS

家	jiā	home, family
北方	běifāng	north
南方	nánfāng	south
上海	Shànghǎi	Shanghai
孩子	háizi	child
男孩儿	nánhái	boy
女孩儿	nǚhái	girl
爱人	àiren	spouse
中学	zhōngxué	middle school
工作	gōngzuò	work, job

PREPOSITION

在	zài	in, at
---	-----	--------

VERBS

回	huí	to return to
有	yǒu	to have
工作	gōngzuò	to work
作	zuò	to do, to make

INTERROGATIVES

几	jǐ	How many...? How much...?
---	----	---------------------------

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

家	jiā	home, family, house	公家, 大家, 国家, 文学家, 书法家, 老人家
有	yǒu	to have	有的…有的…, 有人, 有名, 没有人
几	jǐ	how many...? how much ...?; small tea table	
口	kǒu	mouth, opening	口语, 人口
回	huí	return to	回去, 回想
方	fāng	orientation, place, method	方法, 地方, 东方, 西方, 大方
上	shàng	above, on, to go up, to get on	上学, 地上, 马上
海	hǎi	sea	海南, 地中海, 地中海人
孩	hái	child	孩子王, 生孩子
子	zǐ	child	子儿, 子女, 女子, 老子,
	zi	[suffix]	日子, 本子, 样子, 李子, 儿子
个	gè	individual	个人, 那个, 个子, 个儿
男	nán	boy, man, male	男人, 男生, 男的, 男子, 男子汉
女	nǚ	girl, woman, female	女人, 女生, 女士, 女子, 女儿
爱	ài	to love	爱国, 爱好
工	gōng	to work, to do, to make	工人, 人工, 男工, 女工, 工作
作	zuò	to do, to make	作法, 作家
她	tā	she, her	她们

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

家



宀 + 豕



丶 丶 宀 宀 宀 宀 宀 宀 宀 家

roof radical + "pig"

a pig under a roof



有



ナ + 月



一 ナ 才 有 有 有

hand radical + "moon" (here it is the meat radical)

a hand holding a piece of meat

几

幾



丿 几

a low table

口



丿 凵 凵

a *mouth* (sometimes a space or a symbol)

回



口 + 口



丿 凵 凵 回 回 回

wall radical + "mouth"

a whirlpool

方



丶 一 ナ 方

an agricultural tool? maybe an indicator of position?

上



丿 丨 上

a symbolic point *above* a line

海



氵 氵 汜 汆 海 海 海 海



氵 + 每 (母) water radical + "every" ("mother")



water and a mother (the breasts of a mother and a hairpin): the sea, mother of all water courses

孩



了 子 子 子 孑 孓 孩 孩 孩



子 + 亥 "child" + phonetic element

子



a child wrapped in clothing



个

個



个 人 个



a stalk and leaves of bamboo (one unit)

男



丩 冂 田 田 男 男



田 + 力

"field" + "force"



the blade of a plough working the fields

女



女 女 女



a woman, hands joined and one leg bent

爱

愛



丩 女 友 友 友 友 友 友 友 友 友



爪 + 一 + 友 claw radical + two-stroke roof radical + "friendship"



two hands and the heart

工



工 工 工



a tool

作



亻 亻 亻 亻 作 作 作



亻 + 乍 person radical + collar radical



the cut (design) of a piece of clothing starting from the collar

她



女 + 也 "woman" + "also"

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The measure word (or classifier)

1.1 Measure words can be used in two different situations:

- between a demonstrative adjective (such as the interrogative 哪 nǎ) and a noun;
- between a numeral adjective (such as the interrogative 几 jǐ) and a noun.

E. g. 这个人 那个人 哪个人?
三个人 几个人?

1.2 Measure words are indicators of the category to which something belongs or the perspective from which that thing is viewed. There are many classifiers:

- 个 gè, Mw for individuals, it is often used as a general classifier.
- 本 běn, Mw for bound objects (books, etc.)
- 口 kǒu, Mw for people when counted as members of a family.

E. g. 我们三个人。 There are three of us.
我们三口人。 There are three people in our family.
我有三本书。 I have three books.

1.3 The noun placed after a measure word can be understood.

- 这本 this one (referring to a book)

2. The word “two”: In general when referring to two things or two people 两 liǎng is used (followed by a measure word). In all other cases 二 èr is used.

E. g. 两个人 / 两本书 /
十二个人 / 二十本书 ...

3. In general the basic plan of a Chinese sentence is as follows: subject (or general theme) / circumstance (setting) / verb / complement.

4. The determining particle 的 de is often omitted when referring to close relationships.

E. g. 你爱人
我孩子
他家

APPLICATIONS

你去哪儿?
我回家。

他	国
你们	上海
你爱人	北京
你的老师	南京
小马	家

你家在北方吗?
我家不在北方。

南方	南京
北京	山东
上海	山西

你家有几口人?
我家有四口人。

他家	三
你的老师家	六
小王家	八

你有几个孩子?
我有两个孩子。

男孩儿	一
女孩儿	四
学生	九
老师	五

你爱人在哪儿工作?
她在中学工作。

你	大学
他	小学
她们	北京
小马	上海

你作什么工作?
我是老师。

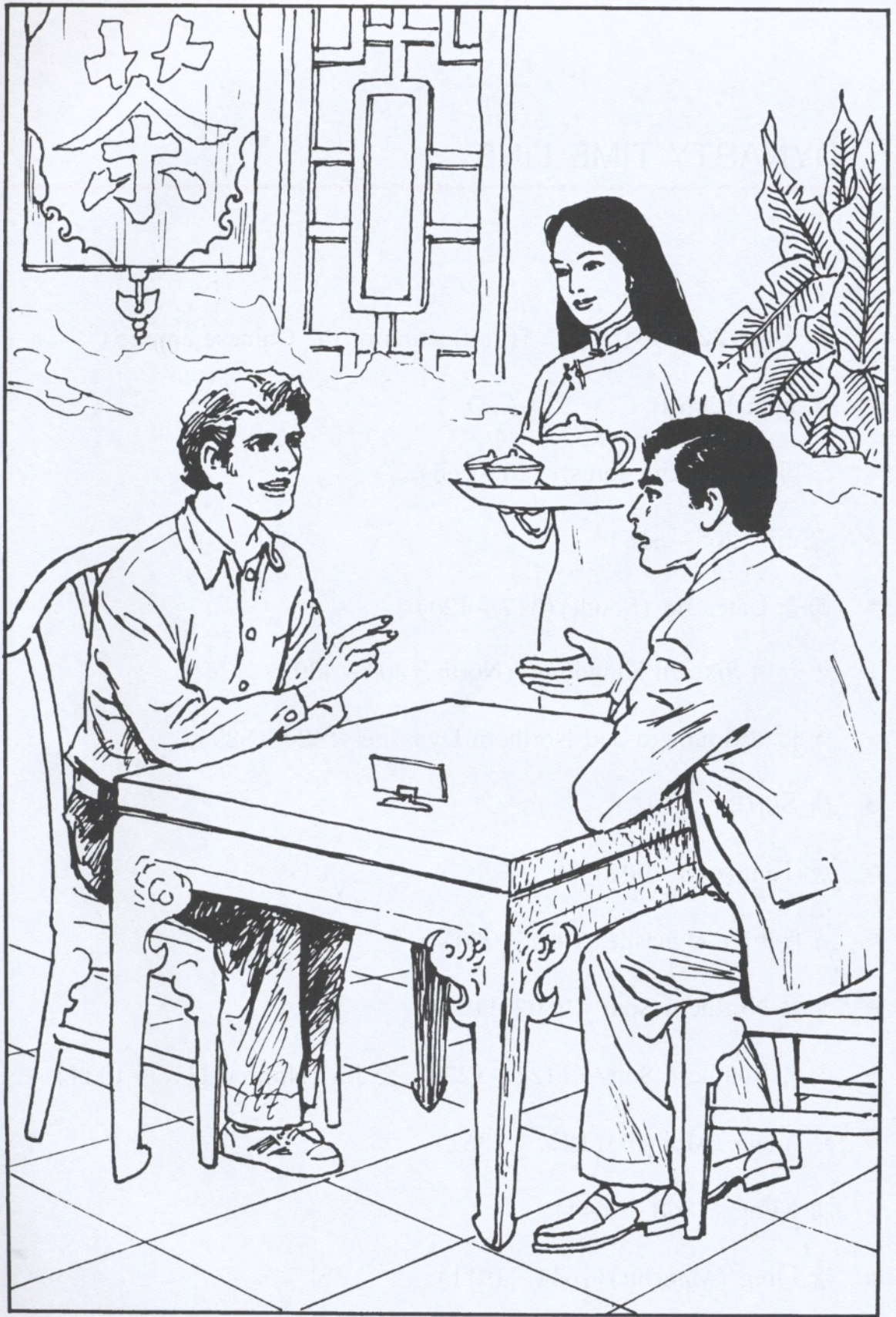
他	学生
小王	工人
你爱人	老师

CIVILISATION

- Perhaps more so in China than in other places the differences between the North and the South are very easily simplified. Northern winters are as long as southern summers. In the North the soil is dry and yellow unlike the water and greenery of the South. The North is rural, slow and traditional; the South of China is commercial, active and open to foreign influences.
- Traditionally speaking there are five cardinal points—the four main compass points and the centre. Even today it is common to use these cardinal points as references. “You are looking for that place? Go south and then turn toward the west.”
- The set of beliefs that takes these cardinal points into account when determining where to place tombs, houses, etc. is called geomancy (风水 fēngshuǐ “wind and water”).
 - >> Traditional houses usually have their entrances facing south as is the case for the emperor’s throne. This allows protection from the evil spirits that are believed to come from the north.
 - >> In the traditional cemetery on the island in the bay of Miro around Hong Kong the tombs are arranged according to the deceased’s horoscope.
 - >> A geomantic mirror is sometimes hung above certain entrances with the unbroken lines of Yang and the broken lines of Yin from the classic *Book of Changes* (易经 Yìjīng) drawn on it. It is said to be capable of diverting “bad winds”.
- A husband and wife would address each other using their whole names i. e. surname and name (“Wang Liyang”), the surname preceded by “Old” or “Little” (“Xiao Wang”), or simply the first name alone (“Liyang”).
- In days of old, very young children were presented with miniature objects. If they tried to grab a book, a brush or an inkwell it was thought that they would later be scholars. It was thought that they would be merchants if they stretched their hands towards the abacus.

DYNASTY TIME LINE

- 秦 Qin (221 – 207 B. C.)(unification of the Chinese empire)
- 汉 Han (206 B. C. – 220 A. D.)
- 三国 Three Kingdoms (220 – 265)
- 晋 Jin (265 – 316)
- 西晋 Later Jin (South)(317 – 420)
- 十六国 Sixteen Kingdoms (North)(304 – 439)
- 南北朝 Southern and Northern Dynasties (420 – 589)
- 隋 Sui(589 – 618)
- 唐 Tang(618 – 907)
- 五代 Five Dynasties (907 – 960)
- 北宋 Northern Song (960 – 1127)
- 南宋 Southern Song (1127 – 1279), 金 Jin (North)(1115 – 1234)
- 元 Yuan (Mongol)(1277 – 1367)
- 明 Ming (1368 – 1644)
- 清 Qing (Manchu)(1644 – 1911)



第5课 你想喝一点儿什么？



田：小王，你想喝一点儿什么？

王：喝茶。你呢？

田：我想喝一杯可口可乐。

王：这不是喝可口可乐的地方，是茶馆。

田：哦，是喝茶的地方。好，要一杯茶。

王：喝花茶还是红茶？

田：红茶是什么茶？

王：法国人叫‘黑茶’。

田：你们法国人喜欢喝什么？

王：喜欢喝酒。你喝过法国酒吗？

田：没有。法国人喝开水吗？

王：不喝，喝凉水。

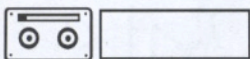


我是北方人，喜欢喝花茶。我孩子喜欢喝可口可乐。我的学生都是法国人。他们喜欢喝酒。法国人也喜欢喝红茶。他们不喝开水，喝凉水。



我是北方人，喜欢喝花茶。我孩子喜欢喝可口可乐。我的学生都是法国人。他们喜欢喝酒。法国人也喜欢喝红茶。他们不喝开水，喝凉水。

NEW WORDS



MEASUER WORDS

一点儿
杯

yidiǎnr
bēi

a little
[Mw for the contents of a glass or a cup]

NOUNS

茶

chá

tea

可口可乐

kěkǒukělè

Coca-Cola

地方

dìfang

place

茶馆

cháguǎn

tea house

花茶

huāchá

Jasmine tea

红茶

hóngchá

black tea

黑

hēi

black

酒

jiǔ

wine

开水

kāishuǐ

hot boiled water

凉水

liángshuǐ

cold water

VERBS

喝

hē

to drink

要

yào

to want

喜欢

xǐhuan

to like

INTERROGATIVE

还是

háishi...

or... ?

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

喝	hē	to drink	
点	diǎn	point, o'clock, a little; to point out	点名, 地点, 一点点
茶	chá	tea	茶几儿
杯	bēi	cup, glass; [Mw]	杯子, 酒杯, 茶杯
可	kě	can, permit	可可, 可是, 可爱, 可不是, 可贵, 可口
乐	yuè	music	
	lè	happy	
馆	guǎn	establishment, house for guests	图书馆
要	yào	to want, must, to order (something)	要是, 要不
花	huā	flower	花生, 茶花
还	hái	still	
	huán	to give back	
红	hóng	red	红的, 红十字, 口红
黑	hēi	black	黑的, 黑人
喜	xǐ	delight; to like	喜爱
欢	huān	joy	欢乐
酒	jiǔ	alcohol, alcoholic drink, wine	酒家, 酒杯, 喜酒, 名酒
开	kāi	to open, to turn on, to boil, to drive	开花, 开口, 开学
水	shuǐ	water	山水, 口水, 茶水
凉	liáng	cool	

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

喝



口 口 口 喝 喝 喝 喝



see 渴 “to be thirsty”

点

點



卜 卜 卜 占 占 占 点 点 点



占 (卜 + 口) + ...

“foretell” (“divination” + “mouth”) + fire radical

茶



一 艹 艹 艹 茶 茶 茶 茶



艹 + 人 + 木 grass radical + “man” + “tree”



茶

a tree and its vegetation

杯



木 + 不

“tree” + “no”

可



一 丁 可 可 可



可

breath exhaled by the mouth

乐

樂



一 一 乐 乐 乐



樂

a musical instrument with a wooden support underneath; the silk on either side represents the strings

馆

館



一 一 馆 馆 馆 馆 馆



饣 + 官

food radical + “mandarin”



館

a covered rice container and the guard of the ramparts

要



西 + 女

“west” + “woman”



要

two hands embracing a woman’s waist

花



一 十 艹 艹 艹 花 花



艹 + 化

flower radical + "to change"

还

還



一 丿 丿 丿 丿 还 还



不 + 辶

"no" + walking radical

红

紅



纟 纟 纟 纟 纟 纟 纟



纟 + 工

silk radical + "work"



纟

a skein of silk

黑



四 四 四 黑 黑 黑 黑 黑



四 + 土 + 灬

"four" + "earth" + fire radical



黑

the soot deposited by smoke escaping from a duct

喜



一 十 士 喜 喜 喜 喜 喜 喜



士 + 豆 + 口

"scholar" + "soya bean" (abbr.) + "mouth"



喜

a drum, a hand and a mouth

欢

歡



丿 又 又 又 欢 欢



又 + 欠

"again" + person with open mouth radical



欠: 欠

a person with his mouth open, singing

酒



灬 灬 灬 灬 酒 酒 酒 酒



灬 + 酉

water radical + container radical



酒

a decorated container

开

開



一 二 开 开



开

two hands *unlocking* a door

水



丿 丿 水 水



水

a water current

凉



冫 + 京

ice radical + "capital"

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. Compare:

- 一杯水 yì bēi shuǐ a glass of water (the water being viewed from the perspective of being the contents of the glass)
- 一个水杯 yí gè shuǐ bēi a water glass (seen as an object)

2. The information i. e. the detail that the determining particle 的 de attaches to a noun, can in fact be an entire clause.

E. g.	看的书	the book <i>that I am reading</i>
	他要的地图	the map <i>that he wants</i>
	你写的汉字	the sinograms <i>that you write</i>
	小王去的地方	the place <i>where Little Wang goes</i>
	老师喝的茶	the tea <i>that the teacher is drinking</i>

APPLICATIONS

你想喝一点儿什么?
我想喝一杯可口可乐。

他	茶
你们	红茶
她们	花茶
小王	酒
老师	法国酒
你爱人	凉水
你孩子	开水

这是什么地方?
这是茶馆。

中学	喝茶的地方
北京	工作的地方
上海	

你要什么？
我要一杯茶。

红茶
开水

酒
凉水

你喝花茶还是喝红茶？
我喝花茶。

学中文
去北京
说汉语
姓王
喜欢喝茶
想去中国

学法文
去上海
说日语
姓马
喜欢喝酒
想去日本

你是中国人还是日本人？
我是日本人。

美国人
日本人

法国人
美国人

你喜欢喝什么？
我喜欢喝酒。

想
要

你喜欢他吗？
我喜欢他。

马老师
小王
立阳

这是谁看的书？
这是我看的书。

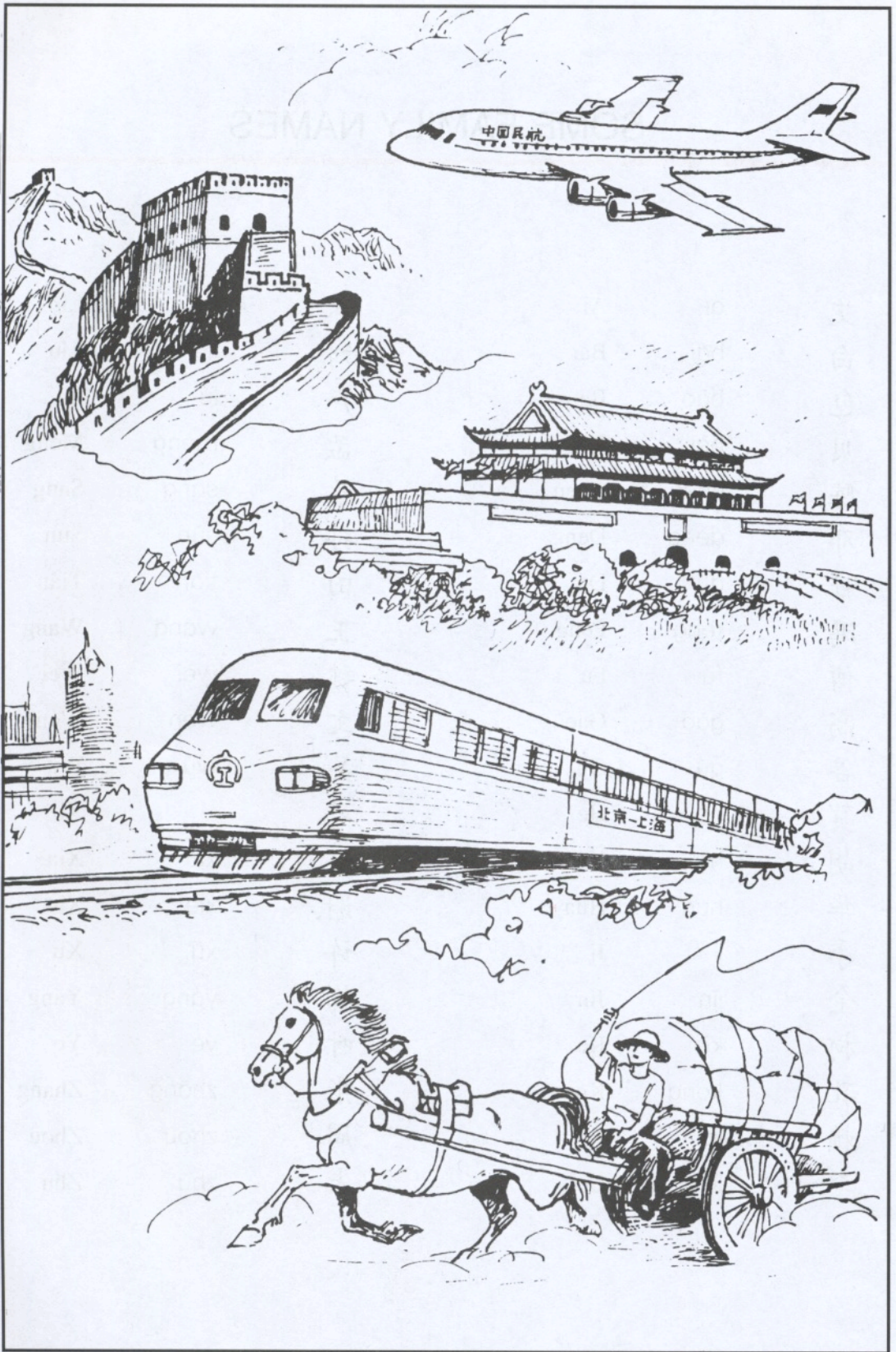
喝的茶
写的汉字
要的可口可乐

CIVILISATION

- The daily drink is hot water. The origin of this custom is not only a question of hygiene but it is also connected to a concept of traditional medicine according to which the body temperature must not be disturbed. Alcohol, for example, is sometimes heated up before drinking.
- The usual drink with a meal is soup: one says 喝汤 hē tāng (drink soup). It is usually drunk in the middle or at the end of the meal.
- Alcoholic drinks are essentially made from cereals.
- As well as Coca-Cola, other names of drinks are created by phonetic transcription: 啤酒 pījiǔ beer, 香槟酒 xiāngbīnjiǔ champagne, 威士忌酒 wēishìjǐjiǔ whiskey, 咖啡 kāfēi coffee (not a common drink in China).
- Tea, along with hot water, is the most common drink. It maintains a certain ritual character: it is served upon the arrival of a guest. Jasmine tea is preferred in the North, green tea 绿茶 lǜchá is preferred in the South. The most famous tea is Dragon Well tea, 龙井 lóngjǐng. Indian tea, also called black tea, owes its name to the colour of the fermented leaves; the same tea is called “red tea” in China in reference to the colour of the infusion. The quality of a cup of tea depends upon the choice of tea leaves (preferably the youngest and the highest), the type of soil, the exposure and finally on the type of water used.
- Etiquette has it that, when one drinks, one screens one’s cup with the free hand or, as in the old days, with one’s sleeve.

SOME FAMILY NAMES

艾	ài	Ai	林	lín	Lin
白	bái	Bai	刘	liú	Liu
包	bāo	Bao	卢	lú	Lu
贝	bèi	Bei	孟	mèng	Meng
陈	chén	Chen	桑	sāng	Sang
邓	dèng	Deng	孙	sūn	Sun
杜	dù	Du	田	tián	Tian
冯	féng	Feng	王	wáng	Wang
傅	fù	Fu	魏	wèi	Wei
高	gāo	Gao	文	wén	Wen
谷	gǔ	Gu	吴	wú	Wu
贺	hè	He	习	xí	Xi
胡	hú	Hu	夏	xià	Xia
华	huà	Hua	谢	xiè	Xie
季	jì	Ji	许	xǔ	Xu
金	jīn	Jin	杨	yáng	Yang
柯	kē	Ke	叶	yè	Ye
孔	kǒng	Kong	张	zhāng	Zhang
赖	lài	Lai	周	zhōu	Zhou
李	lǐ	Li	朱	zhū	Zhu



第6课 你什么时候去中国?



田：你什么时候去中国？

王：我今年七月去。

田：你怎么去？坐飞机还是坐火车？

王：我坐飞机去，坐火车回来。

田：坐火车要几天？

王：要八天。坐飞机要十六个小时。

田：你买飞机票了吗？

王：还没有。

田：买票的人多不多？

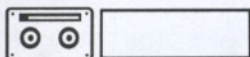


我想今年九月去中国。老师说，去中国，坐火车要八天，坐飞机要十六个小时。我不喜欢坐火车，我喜欢坐飞机。我要坐飞机去中国。我还没有买飞机票。我想三月去买飞机票。



我想今年九月去中国。老师说，去中国，坐火车要八天，坐飞机要十六个小时。我不喜欢坐火车，我喜欢坐飞机。我要坐飞机去中国。我还没有买飞机票。我想三月去买飞机票。

NEW WORDS



NOUNS

时候	shíhou	(point in) time, (duration of) time
今年	jīnnián	this year
飞机	fēijī	aeroplane
火车	huǒchē	train
天	tiān	day
小时	xiǎoshí	hour
票	piào	ticket

PREPOSITION

坐	zuò	by (means of transport)
---	-----	-------------------------

ADVERB

还	hái	still
---	-----	-------

VERBS

坐	zuò	to take (means of transport)
回来	huílai	to come back
买	mǎi	to buy

QUALIFYING VERBS

多	duō	(to be) numerous, many, much
少	shǎo	(to be) few

GRAMMATICAL WORD

了	le	[modal particle]
---	----	------------------

INTERROGATIVES

什么时候	shénme shíhou	when...?
怎么	zěnmē	how...?

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

时	shí	hour, (point in) time, (duration of) time	有时, …的时候, 过时, 时期
候	hòu	(ancient) period of five days; to wait	
今	jīn	present, current, today	今天
年	nián	year	年年, 过年, 去年 中年
坐	zuò	to sit down, to take, by (a means of transport)	
飞	fēi	to fly	飞去, 飞来
机	jī	machine	
火	huǒ	fire	火山, 火山口, 火花, 火候
车	chē	chariot, vehicle (with wheels)	马车, 开车, 小车
来	lái	to come to (direction), serve me	本来, 看来
天	tiān	sky, day	天子, 天天, 天上, 天地, 天国, 天生, 天文, 冬天
买	mǎi	to buy	买东西
票	piào	ticket	车票, 月票
了	le	[modal particle]	得了
多	duō	(to be) numerous, many, much	
少	shǎo	(to be) few	多少

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

时

時



日 日一 时 时



日 + 寸

“sun” + “thumb”



時

plants, manual work and the action of the sun

候



彳 彳一 候 候 候 候 候 候



侯 + 丨

“marquis” + a stroke (彳 “arrow”)

今



ノ 人 今 今



今

a bell that announces the time by ringing (“jin! jin!”)

年



ノ 人 年 年 年 年



年

cereal and a person, the *annual* harvest

坐



ノ 人 人 土 坐 坐 坐



人 + 人 + 土 two “people” + “earth”



坐

two people greeting each other, *sitting down*

飞

飛



飞 飞 飞



飞

a bird unfolding its wings

机

機



一 十 才 木 机 机



木 + 几

“tree” + “how many”

火



、ノ火火



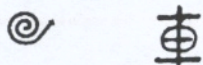
three flames

车

車



一古左车



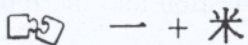
a chariot seen from above

来

來



一丩丩丩来来



"one" + "rice"

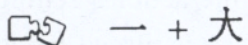


wheat

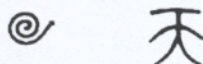
天



一二月天



"one" + "big"



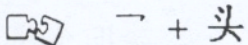
the celestial vault above a person, the canopy of heaven above

买

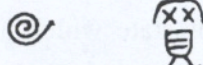
買



丩丩丩丩买买



a stroke + "head"

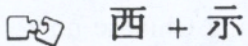


shells in a basket

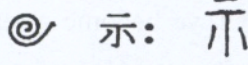
票



西西西票票票



"west" + "to reveal"



dolmen, a stone alter for offerings to the spirits

了



丩了

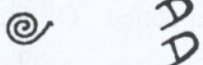
多



夕夕夕多多多



two "twilights"

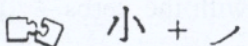


the succession of many twilights

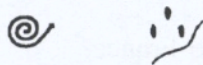
少



丩小小少



"little" and a stroke



three grains of rice (variant of 小)

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. A new interrogative word 什么时候 shénme shíhou “What time? When?”. Once again note the stability of the word order in the question and the reply.

E. g. 你 什么时候 去中国?
我 今年七月 去中国。

2. A new preposition 坐 zuò is used for means of transport except those that are ridden (bicycles, motorbikes, horses). It is a question of the action's setting, of the circumstances. The prepositional phrase formed in this way is placed before the verb.

E. g. 我 坐飞机 去日本。

3. 天 tiān and 年 nián are used without measure words because as units of measurement(of time) they are themselves measure words.

E. g. 两天

4. 4.1 了 le is a final particle. It conveys a change of state which affects the whole statement.

E. g. 我买飞机票了。 (Now that) I've decided to buy plane tickets.
他学汉语了。 He's learning Chinese now.
我是老师了。 (Now that) I've become a teacher.
他有两个孩子了。 He has two children now.
中国人多了。 (Now that) The population of China has increased.

七月了! It's July now. (July has just begun.)

- 4.2 With verbs of action the negative is 没 méi or 没有 méiyǒu (the negative sentence indicates that the change has not yet happened. Of course one can also use 还没有 hái méi or 还没有 méiyǒu).

5. 5.1 来 lái can be used as a main verb, in which case it means “to come” and is placed together with its complement as is the case with the verbs 去 qù, 回 huí and 在 zài.

E. g. 他来法国。 He's coming to France.

5.2 In 回来 huílai, 来 lái is a directional: placed after the verb of action, it indicates a movement towards the speaker or a place of reference. The other direction, a movement away from the speaker, is indicated by the directional 去 qù.

E. g. 他回去。 He's going back.

他回来。 He's coming back.

5.3 When the complement indicates a place it is placed between the verb and the directional.

E. g. 他回家去。 He's going back home.

APPLICATIONS

你什么时候去中国?
我今年七月去。

南京	一月
北京	二月
日本	三月
美国	十二月

你怎么去?
我坐飞机去。

他	火车
小马	飞机

去中国,坐火车要几天?
要八天。

日本	飞机	小时
南京	火车	小时
美国	飞机	天

你买飞机票了吗?
还没有。

火车票	书
中国地图	茶
可口可乐	酒
汉语书	票

他去中国了吗?
他去中国了。

回家	是老师
学中文	来法国

买票的人多不多?
很多。

喝茶	学中文
喝酒	去中国
坐飞机	姓王

CIVILISATION

- China is a country of discoveries and inventions. As well as paper, porcelain, the umbrella, matches, printing, paper money and gun powder, we also owe it, in the field of transport, the wheelbarrow invented one thousand years before it appeared in Europe. The Chinese also invented a wheelbarrow with a sail, the compass, the rudder and the parachute conceived one thousand five hundred years before the sketches of Leonardo da Vinci. The toy helicopter, from the fourteenth century A. D. , went up into the air after a cord wrapped around the blade shaft was pulled.
- A text from the year 851 revealing the impressions of Arab merchants who regularly followed the sea route towards India and China shows the first portrait of the Chinese to reach the West. It includes the following notions:
 - >> “Poor or rich, old or young, all Chinese learn to write characters. ”
 - >> “ There is a school and a teacher to instruct the poor and their children in every town. These school teachers are fed with money from the treasury. ”
 - >> “They have equipment to show and measure the time. ”
 - >> “. . . a fragrant grass, strong and bitter. . . they drink it with hot water. ” (tea)
 - >> “A pottery of excellent quality with which they make bowls as fine as glass bottles; one can see the water’s shadow through them. ” (porcelain).
- Marco Polo took the route to China in 1272 and came back 23 years later. His account *The Travels of Marco Polo* had a long lasting impression on the imagination of Westerners.
- When it is 10 a. m. in the U. K. , it is 4 or 5 p. m. (depending on the beginning of daylight saving time) in the whole of China.

“SNOWBALL” VERSION 2



有一天,我去日本东京看一个很有名的作家。那个作家,看样子是西方人。他说他们国家是一个王国,在地中海,国王是黑人。他们国家人口不多,有不少火山。男人的想法、作法和女人不一样。生日的时候,男的喜欢买酒杯,女的喜欢买茶花。男的去图书馆看书,女的在家看书。女人生孩子的时候,男人去买花生,大人、小孩儿都来喝喜酒。他们国家天上没有飞机,地上没有火车,工人们冬天不工作,老人都想去中国。他们那儿外国东西不贵,可是人们不喜欢买外国东西,喜欢买本国的。大家都很爱国。

你想一想,这是哪个国家?

和: see Sequence 3. 1

SUPPLEMENTARY TEXT 1



“Just as in nature, in China the language offers you a view but makes no conclusions.”

Henri Michaud

A Landscape Painting

山 水 画
远 看 山 有 色
近 听 水 无 声
春 去 花 还 在
人 来 鸟 不 惊



NEW WORDS

画	huà	picture
远	yuǎn	far
色	sè	colour
近	jìn	close, near
听	tīng	listen
无	wú	没有, without
声	shēng	noise
春	chūn	spring
鸟	niǎo	bird
惊	jīng	to be afraid of

A Chinese poem is read, is listened to. . . It is looked at as well:

远...近	far... near (distance)
看...听	see... listen
山...水	mountains... water (scenery)
有...无	to have... not to have (existence and non-existence)
去...来	to go... to come (movement)

远 近

近 听

还 不

PART 2

Sequences

2.1 People

2.2 Studies

2.3 China

“Snowball” Version 3

2.4 The House

2.5 Shopping

2.6 Transport

“Snowball” Version 4





SEQUENCE 2.1

第7课 你好!



张教元：小王，你好！好久不见了，最近怎么样？

王万民：还可以。

张教元：那本画报你看完了吗？

王万民：还没有。

张教元：那个人是谁？

王万民：他是我的朋友，王里重。

张教元：你们是什么时候认识的？

王万民：去年二月。

张教元：他今年多大了？

王万民：二十九岁了？

张教元：好，我走了，有时间到我家去。再见！

王万民：再见！

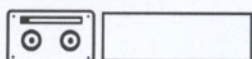


我有一个中国朋友，叫王里重。我们是一九八五年在北京认识的。在北京，我去过他的家。他爱人是大学老师。他有一个六岁的女孩儿。我好久没见他了，我很想他。



我有一个中国朋友，叫王里重。我们是一九八五年在北京认识的。在北京，我去过他的家。他爱人是大学老师。他有一个六岁的女孩儿。我好久没见他了，我很想他。

NEW WORDS



TIME WORDS

最近
去年

zuìjìn
qùnián

lately, recently
last year

NOUNS

张
教元
万民
画报
朋友
里重
岁
时间

Zhāng
Jiàoyuán
Wànmin
huàbào
péngyou
Lǐzhòng
suì
shíjiān

[surname]
[given name]
[given name]
pictorial, illustrated magazine
friend
[given name]
years old
(duration of) time

PREPOSITION

到

dào

until

ADVERB

还

hái

still

VERBS

见
可以
看(完)
完
认识
走

jiàn
kěyǐ
kàn(wán)
wán
rènshi
zǒu

to meet, to see, to notice
can, may, O. K.
(to finish) reading
to finish
to know (a person, a character)
to leave

QUALIFYING VERB

久

jiǔ

a long time

EXPRESSIONS

你好
再见

nǐhǎo
zàijiàn

hello!
goodbye!

INTERROGATIVE

多

duō

how (big, long...)?

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

久	jiǔ	a long time	不久, 多久?
见	jiàn	to notice [resultative]	看见
最	zuì	the most. . .	最好, 最大, 最小, 最多
近	jìn	near, to be near	近东
以	yǐ	by means of	…以上, …以外
张	zhāng	to stretch out; Mw	张三李四, 开张
教	jiào jiāo	education to teach	教学, 教学法, 教师 教书
元	yuán	first, unit	元月, 美元
万	wàn	ten thousand	万一, 一万, 两万
民	mín	people	人民, 国民
画	huà	drawing, picture; to draw, to paint (pictures)	画儿, 画家, 画画, 国画 画图,
报	bào	newspaper; to inform	报名, 日报, 月报, 学报
完	wán	to finish [resultative]	完了, 说完, 写完
朋	péng	friend	
友	yǒu	friend	友人, 男朋友, 女朋友
里	lǐ	inside; <i>li</i> [unit of length]	这里, 那里, 哪里, 家里人, 里里外外
重	zhòng	heavy	重要, 重点
认	rèn	to recognise	认字, 认生
识	shí	to know, to distinguish	识字, 不识字
岁	suì	years old	万岁
走	zǒu	to walk, to leave	走马看花
间	jiān	interval	中间, 民间, 人间
到	dào	until; to arrive at [resultative]	得到
再	zài	again	再说, 再来

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

久



久



a person with a slowed down walk

见

見



见



a person and an eye

最



最



日 + 取 (耳 + 又)

“sun” + “to take out” (“ear” + right hand radical)



取



to remove a prisoner's ear, an ancient sign of capture

近



近



斤 + 辶

“pound” (weight) + walking radical

以



以



a person using a ploughshare

张

張



张



弓 + 长

“bow” (archery) + “long”



a bow and a man with long hair

教



一 十 土 廾 孝 孝 教 教



孝 + 廾

“filial piety” + hand holding a stick radical



an old person, a child and a hand holding a stick

元



一 二 儿 元



二 + 儿

“two” + “child”



a person's head

万

萬



一 丁 万



centipede

民



一 冂 尸 尸 民



a pierced eye, a prisoner

画

畫



一 丁 冂 冂 田 田 画 画



冂 + 田

three strokes + “field”



an instrument that *draws out* the boundaries of fields

报

報



一 扌 扌 扌 扌 报 报



扌 + 艮

hand radical + element of “submission”



a person whose hands are immobilised being forced to *confess*

完



宀 + 元

roof radical + “unit”

朋



月 + 月

two moons



two strings of jade

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The construction 不…了 bù…le corresponds to the English expression “no longer” (“Now that... not”).

E. g. 他不学日语了。
我不是学生了。

He doesn't study Japanese any more.
I'm no longer a student.

2. 2.1 A resultative is a secondary verb attached to the main action verb and expresses the result thus attained. The action verb and the resultative together form a complex verb. Directionals (see S. 1. 6) are a type of resultative.

- 2.2 完 wán is a resultative verb expressing the result of “finishing”.

E. g. 看完

finish reading (I read and the result is
I have finished)

说完

finish speaking

写完

finish writing

3. The completed aspect or perfect aspect.

- 3.1 了 le, placed immediately after the verb, is a completed aspect verbal suffix. It indicates that the action is seen to be finished.

E. g. 我写了三个字。

I've written three characters.

王老师买了三本书。

Teacher Wang has bought three books.

- 3.2 The completed aspect is not the same as a tense. Like in English, the perfect aspect is not necessarily linked to the past.

E. g. 我喝了茶去看你。

I will go to see you after having finished tea.

我买了飞机票去你家。

I will go to your home after having bought the plane tickets.

- 3.3 The negative sentence uses the negative 没 méi or 没有 méiyóu omitting the 了 le.

E. g. 我没(有)买书。

I have not bought any books.

4. 4. 1 The construction 是...的 shì...de usually encompasses the part at the end of a sentence containing the adverbial phrase. It is an emphatic term of phrase indicating that the circumstances not the action are the most important (date, place, means...).

E. g. 他是一九八九年生的。 He was born in 1989 (the important fact being not that he was born but that he was born in 1989).

我们是去年认识的。 We met each other last year.

我是坐飞机去的。 I went by plane.

4. 2 This construction is generally used for events that have already occurred. It excludes the use of the verbal suffixes 了 le and 过 guo.

5. 多 duō linked to certain qualifying verbs is an interrogative of measure.

E. g. 你多大了? How old are you? (How big in age?)

那个地方多大? How big is that place?

这本书多重? How heavy is this book?

6. 到 dào is a new preposition relating to destination.

E. g. 我到中国去。 I'm going to China.

APPLICATIONS

那本画报你看完了吗?

我看完了。

我还没有看完。

这本书 看完

汉字 写完

茶 喝完

那个人是谁?

他是我的朋友。

这个人 我的老师

他 我爱人

你们是什么时候认识的?
我们是去年二月认识的。

去	今年三月
回来	去年九月
买	星期一
学	一九七三年

你是怎么去的?
我是坐飞机去的。

来	火车
回来	飞机

你今年多大了?
十九岁了。

他	四十
你爱人	三十五
你孩子	十五

你买了几本书?
我买了三本书。

喝	杯酒
看	本画报
写	个汉字

你到哪儿去了?
我到北京去。

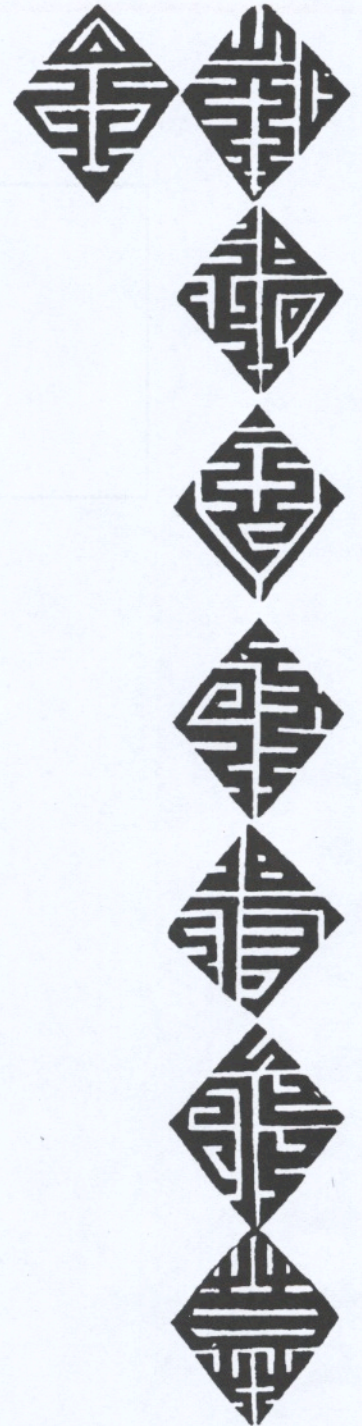
他	南京
你们	茶馆
他们	我朋友家

CIVILISATION

- To ask somebody's age, etiquette requires that the question “你几岁了? Nǐ jǐ suì le?” is reserved for children and that “你多大岁数了? Nǐ duō dà suì shù le?” is said to adults. In ancient times to indicate one's age, for example a thirty-year old person, a polite expression which literally meant “I have uselessly passed thirty years of my life” would be used.
- The signs of the Chinese Zodiac are connected to the year of birth. Knowledge of a person's sign allows one to guess his age.
- Confucian wisdom teaches that “At thirty one's opinions are already formed, at forty all doubts are overcome and at fifty one knows the will of heaven.”
- Traditionally when a child is born he/she is already one year old. The child's second birthday is celebrated as soon as the new year passes.
- Noodles are eaten when celebrating a birthday. They symbolise long life.
- The usual way of greeting someone is to say “你吃饭了吗? Nǐ chī fàn le ma?” (“Have you eaten?”). At appropriate times other expressions can also be used such as 上班去 shàng bān qù (“You're going to work!”) or 进城去 jìn chéng qù (“You're going to town!”). In the place of goodbye the expression 慢慢走 màn màn zǒu (“Go slowly!”) is used in the same way.
- Laughter (笑 xiào) is a departure from convention and can be the expression of different emotions:
 - >> It is sometimes a reaction to a tragic situation and in this case indicates a distancing from the events or the desire not to embarrass the other person (惨笑 cǎn xiào).
 - >> An expression of anger or a way of trying to control one's anger (冷笑 lěng xiào).
 - >> An expression of lack of understanding; in this situation it is used to maintain a bold front.
- The expression “maybe”(可能 kě néng) often conveys information that is completely certain (“Maybe he went to the shop to buy meat to make ravioli”). This is a way of indicating that one does not want to interfere in other people's business.

RIDDLE

你没有他有
天没有地有



命 貴 齒 錫 所 忠 鼎 蓋



第8课 你学了多长时间了？



张：你学过汉语吗？

王：学过。你呢？

张：我现在正在学汉语。

王：你学了多长时间了？

张：我们班的同学都学了一年了，我只学了半年。

王：现在你的中文怎么样？

张：会说一点儿，不能看书。

王：上课的时候，老师说的话你听得懂吗？

张：马马虎虎。昨天老师念课文，我没听懂。

王：今天你几点上课？

张：八点上课，九点半下课。



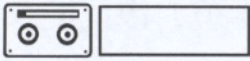
我现在正在学汉语。今天我们八点上课，九点半下课。我们班的同学汉语都学了一年了，我只学了半年。现在我会说一点儿，不能看书。中国人说话，有的我听得懂，有的我听不懂。

上课的时候，老师说的话我都能听懂。



我现在正在学汉语。今天我们八点上课，九点半下课。我们班的同学汉语都学了一年了，我只学了半年。现在我会说一点儿，不能看书。中国人说话，有的我听得懂，有的我听不懂。上课的时候，老师说的话我都能听懂。

NEW WORDS



TIME WORDS

现在	xiànzài	now
昨天	zuótiān	yesterday
今天	jīntiān	today

MEASURE WORD

点	diǎn	o'clock
---	------	---------

NOUNS

班	bān	class, team
同学	tóngxué	classmate
半	bàn	half
话	huà	word
课文	kèwén	text (in a lesson)

ADVERBS

正在	zhèngzài	to be in the process of
只	zhǐ	only

VERBS

会	huì	to know how (to do something)
能	néng	to be able to, can
看(书)	kàn(shū)	to read
听	tīng	to listen
懂	dǒng	to understand
念	niàn	to read out aloud
上(课)	shàng(kè)	to go to (class)
下(课)	xià(kè)	to finish (class)

QUALIFYING VERBS

长	cháng	long
---	-------	------

EXPRESSION

马马虎虎	mǎmǎhūhū	so-so
------	----------	-------

INTERROGATIVE

多长时间	duōcháng shíjiān	how long?(how much time?)
------	------------------	---------------------------

CONSTRUCTION

…的时候	…de shíhou	when
------	------------	------


SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

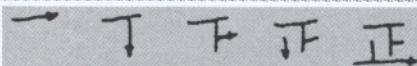
现	xiàn	present, manifest	
正	zhèng	just, right, correct	
长	cháng	long, to be long	长久
	zhǎng	to grow up; boss [suffix]	长得, 长大, 家长
班	bān	class, team	班长, 上班, 下班
同	tóng	together; the same	同时, 不同
只	zhǐ	only	只好, 只是
半	bàn	half	半天, 一半儿, 多半儿
会	huì	to know how to do something; meeting, association	会见, 会长, 工会, 开会, 机会, 一会儿, 年会, 茶会
能	néng	can; possibly; capable	可能
课	kè	a course, class	课本
话	huà	word, language	…的话, 中国话, 会话
听	tīng	to listen	听见, 听到, 听话
懂	dǒng	to understand	
虎	hǔ	tiger	虎年, 老虎
昨	zuó	yesterday	
念	niàn	to read aloud	念书
下	xià	underneath; to go down, to get off	上下文, 下来, 下去

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

现 現  王 + 见 “king” + “to notice”

正


一 + 止 “one” + “to stop” (foot radical)




a *straight* foot in front of a line

长

長




a person with *long* hair

班



王 + 丨 + 王 “king” + knife radical + “king”




to separate jade into two pieces (divide up)

同




Where the lid and the mouth of a vase meet.

只



口 + 八 “mouth” + “eight”

半






a cut up ox

会

會

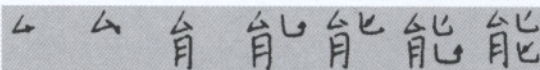


人 + 云 “person” + “cloud”




a food container and its lid

能


厶 + 月 + 匕 “private” radical + “moon” + two daggers




a bear, its *power*

课 課



讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠



讠 + 果

word radical + "fruit"



課

word + fruits on a tree

话 話



讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠 讠



讠 + 舌

word radical + "tongue"



話

words and a tongue sticking out of the mouth

听 聽



口 口 口 听 听 听



口 + 斤

"mouth" + "a pound" (weight)

懂



忄 忄 懂 懂 懂



忄 + 重

heart radical + grass radical + "heavy"

虎



虍 虍 虍 虍 虍 虍 虍 虍 虍 虍



虍 虍

a tiger

昨



日 + 乍

"sun" + collar radical

念



今 + 心

"the present" + "heart"



念

to make real in the heart - to keep something in mind

下



一 下 下 下



一

a symbolic point under a line

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The interrogative of duration (“for how long?”) is 多长时间 “duōcháng shíjiān?” or “多久 duōjiǔ?”.

The duration of a completed action is placed after the verb.

E. g. 你学了多长时间? How long did you study?

2. The sentence with two 了 le. A sentence can contain the perfect aspect verbal suffix 了 le and the final change of state particle 了 le at the same time.

E. g. 我学了三年。 I have studied for three years. (I stopped studying at some undefined time in the past.)

我学了三年了。 I have studied for three years. (until now)

3. The potential or the adverbial (phrase) of result.

- 3.1 The potential is a construction that is used to indicate whether or not the result of the action is achieved.

- 3.2 It is therefore constructed from the complex verb: Verb + Resultative (or directional). To indicate that the result can be or has been achieved, the particle 得 de is placed between the verb and its resultative. To indicate that the result has not been or cannot be achieved the negative 不 bù is placed between the verb and its resultative.

E. g. 你听得懂吗? Do you understand?
Do you manage to understand (by listening)?

我看不懂。 I don't understand. I failed to understand.
(I read and I failed to achieve the result of comprehension).

- 3.3 This construction does not incorporate the perfect aspect.

E. g. 我没听懂。 I didn't understand..I failed to understand.

APPLICATIONS

你学过汉语吗?
我没学过?

学
喝
看
坐

法语
中国酒
中文画报
飞机

我学了多长时间了?
我学了一年了。

来
听
看
学

两个月
一个小时
半个小时
一年半

你会说中文吗?
我会说一点儿。

汉语
法语
日语

你看中文书吗?
我不能看中文书。

看法文画报
去日本
坐火车

老师说的话你听得懂吗?
我听得懂。
我听不懂。

这本书
中国人说话
那本画报

看
听
看

你看得完吗?
我看得完。

写
喝
学

今天你们几点上课?
今天我们八点上课。

下课
回家
去茶馆

十点
六十分
五点半

CIVILISATION

- Statistics tell us that the most common 560 characters represent 80% of all the characters used in books, newspapers and magazines. With the next most common 940 characters, i. e. a total of 1500 characters, this represents 96% of all the characters found in such material. With the addition of a further 700 characters, i. e. a total of 2200, one can cover over 98% of the sum of characters in modern reading material.
- The character 的 is far above all other characters in order of frequency. On average it appears four times in every 100 characters. The next most common characters in order are 一, 了, 是, 不, 我, 在, 有, 人
- If one views characters from the point of view of their combining capacity, i. e. their capacity to compose new words, it is the character 子 that is dominant, found in 668 words, followed by 不, 大, 心, 人, 一 and 头 .
- The official primary school programmes name the following objectives: to master 2500 characters by the age of 9 and 3000 by the age of 12. The learning of characters alone occupies almost half the time during the first years of primary education.
- China has handed down its examination system which first appeared 1500 years ago to the West. The candidates were recruited by the criterion of knowledge and not by heredity. They arrived at the exam site in boats decorated with flags bearing the name of the examination and were greeted by the sound of gongs and cannons. They were shown to wooden cubicles, two metres long and in poor condition. The contents of their dissertation were of little importance. However the candidate had to ensure that the eight-legged essay had a high standard of calligraphy and that a “dignified”, “informal”, “serious”, “grave” or “subtle” tone was adopted as required.

MAP OF CHINA



第9课 中国人口有多少？



张：我问你一个问题，中国人口有多少？

王：不知道，很多吧！

张：再问你一个问题，长江、黄河有多长？

王：不知道，可能很长吧！

张：那你知道什么？

王：我知道四川人口不少，中国自行车很多，中国人用筷子吃饭。

张：你知道孔子的老家在哪儿吗？

王：在山东。

张：你还知道什么？

王：山东在山西东边，湖南在湖北南边。



中国是一个大国，人口很多。长江、黄河很长。四川很大，在中国西南。我还知道中国自行车很多，中国人用筷子吃饭。我去过孔子的老家。他的老家在山东。山东在山西东边。

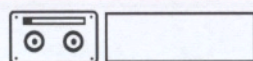


中国是一个大国，人口很多。长江、黄河很长。四川很大，在中国西南。我还知道中国自行车很多，中国人用筷子吃饭。我去过孔子的老家。他的老家在山东。山东在山西东边。

NEW WORDS

CONJUNCTION

那 nà



well then, in that case

NOUNS

问题	wèntí	question, problem
人口	rénkǒu	population
长江	Chángjiāng	the Long River, the Yangtze River
黄河	Huánghé	the Yellow River
四川	Sìchuān	Sichuan Province
自行车	zìxíngchē	bicycle
筷子	kuàizi	chopsticks
孔子	Kǒngzǐ	Confucius
老家	lǎojiā	country of origin, old home
湖南	Húnán	Hunan Province
湖北	Húběi	Hubei Province

LOCATION WORDS

东边	dōngbiān	east
南边	nánbiān	south

PREPOSITION

用 yòng by means of

ADVERB

再 zài again

VERBS

问	wèn	to ask
知道	zhīdao	to know
可能	kěnéng	it is possible that, maybe
吃	chī	to eat
吃(饭)	chī(fàn)	to eat

GRAMMATICAL WORD

吧 ba [final particle of consent, asking for consent]

INTERROGATIVE

多少 duōshao how many? how much?




SINOGRAMS



PRESENTATION





问	wèn	to ask, to inquire	问好, 问候, 学问
题	tí	theme, problem; to write an inscription	题字
知	zhī	to know	知识
道	dào	way	道家, 道教, 人道
吧	ba	[final particle]	
江	jiāng	river	江南, 江西, 江山
黄	huáng	yellow	黄的, 黄酒
河	hé	river	河北, 河南, 河口, 河山
川	chuān	river	
自	zì	oneself	自来水, 自学, 自在
行	xíng	to walk, to go	行不行? 行人, 行李, 行书, 五
	háng	line of business	行, 同行, 外行
用	yòng	to use, using; with, by means of	用法, 有用, 没有用, 不用, 作用
筷	kuài	chopsticks	
吃	chī	to eat	小吃, 好吃, 不好吃
饭	fàn	cooked rice, meal, food	饭馆, 要饭, 中饭, 开饭
孔	kǒng	hole, [surname]	孔家
边	biān	side	一边……一边…… 上边, 下边, 里边,
湖	hú	lake	西湖





SINOGRAMS



MEMORY TECHNIQUE




问 問  门 + 口 “door” + “mouth”
  問
 a mouth between a double door





题 題   是 + 页 “to be” + “page” (arch. “head”)
 是 是 是 是 是 是 是 是


知   矢 + 口 “arrow” + “mouth”
  知
 to achieve *knowledge* by words like an arrow



道   首 + 辶 “head” + walking radical
  道
 to be guided (head: eye and hair) in walking




吧   口 + 巴 “mouth” + “boa”
 口 口 口 口 口 口 吧





江  氵 + 工 water radical + “boa”
  江
 a *water course* and the space between the two banks

黄   艹 + 一 + 由 + 八 grass radical + “one” + “origin” + “eight”
  黄
 a field, the colour of light or fire

河  氵 + 可 water radical + "power"

川   a water way





自  丿 + 目 a point + "eye"
  a nose (indicate oneself by pointing to the nose)

行   彳 + 亍
  crossroad





彳 亍 彳 亍 行 行

"make a step with the left foot" (arch.) +
"make a step with the right foot" (arch.)





用   冂 月 月 月 用
  a bucket, a container (its use)

筷   竹 + 快
  "bamboo" + "fast"





竹 快 竹 快 竹 快 竹 快 竹 快


吃   口 + 乞
  "mouth" + "breath" (abbr. 气)
breath emitted by the mouth; to stutter


口 口 口 吃 吃

饭 飯   饣 + 反
  food radical + "to oppose"

饣 反 饣 反 饣 反 饣 反 饣 反

孔   丿 了 孑 孔
  a child, marked at the place of the fontanelle (hole)

边 邊  力 + 辶 "force" + walking radical

湖  氵 + 胡(古 + 月) water radical + "barbaric" ("antique" + "moon")

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. There are two interrogatives that mean “How many/much?”, 几 jǐ and 多少 duōshǎo.

1.1 几 jǐ used for numbers less than ten. It is followed by a measure word.

E. g. 这儿有几个人? How many people are here?

1.2 多少 duōshǎo can be used in any situation. It is generally used without a measure word.

E. g. 有多少中国人? How many Chinese are there?

2. 吧 ba, as a final particle, can be either interrogative or exclamatory. It is used to gain the consent or the approval of the listener. It can therefore be used to tone down an order.

E. g. 你写吧! Go on, write! (You write it!)

他是中国人吧? He is Chinese isn't he?

3. The preposition 用 yòng introduces an adverbial phrase of means. Like all prepositions, 用 yòng is placed before the verb.

E. g. 中国人用筷子吃饭。 Chinese eat with chopsticks.

他用茶杯喝茶。 He drinks/is drinking tea from a tea cup.

4. To show location, locative words are placed after the noun.

E. g. 飞机外边 outside the plane

茶馆里边 inside the tea house

地图上边 above the map

画报下边 under the illustrated magazine

我家东边 east of my home

中学南边 south of the middle school

APPLICATIONS

你问他几个问题?
我问他三个问题。

我	两
老师	五

中国人口有多少?

法国	美国
日本	四川
北京	上海

长江有多长?

中国	多大
自行车	多重
黄河	多长

中国人用什么吃饭?
中国人用筷子吃饭。

他
日本人
法国人

山东在哪儿?
山东在山西东边。

湖南	湖北南边
山西	山东西边
湖北	湖南北边
日本	中国东边
茶馆	中学南边

CIVILISATION

- The Yellow River and the Yangtze River are among the longest rivers in the world (over 5000 km long). The former, in the north, has watched Chinese civilisation and the Chinese empire grow around its banks. The latter is a little like the Loire in France—it constitutes a geographical separation between the cultures of the North and South.
- Sichuan is the most populous province in China with 115 million inhabitants.
- There are more than eight million bicycles in the whole municipality of Beijing.
- Confucianism and Daoism are the two major schools of thought that have influenced China, and to a certain extent other Asian countries, up to this day.
 - >> The teachings of 孔子 Confucius (551 – 479 B. C.) are a code of social morals and a complete set of governmental principles. This code stresses that everything (and everybody) should conform to its natural place.
 - >> The ideas of 老子 Laozi (put forward in the 道德经 Dàodéjīng or *The Way of Virtue*) and of 庄子 Zhuangzi (fourth century B. C.), the origin of modern Daoism, are mainly philosophy. This school of thought is one of intuition, movements, relativity and nature and is manifested especially in Universal Daoism, its own laws, as well as in the movements of traditional gymnastics and landscape painting in Chinese ink.

——“The virtue of the prince is like the wind, that of the people like the grass. When the wind blows the grass bends”. (Confucius)

——“We model clay to make vases but to use them we depend on the emptiness inside.” (Laozi)

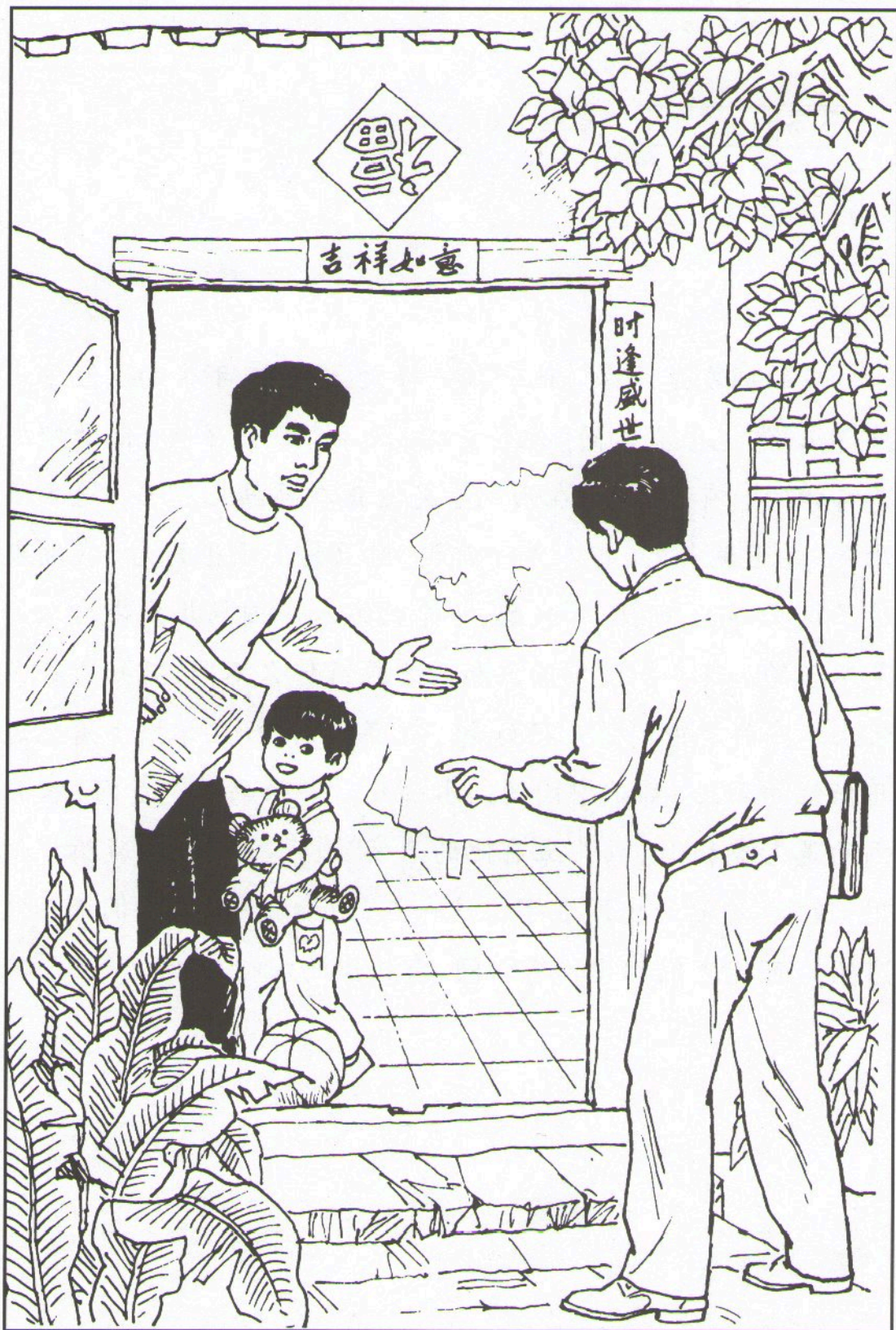
——“Nothing anywhere is more supple and less resistant than water; however, there is nothing which overcomes better what is cold and strong.” (Laozi)

——“Whoever uses a hook, a string, compasses or set square to adjust things offends nature. Whoever uses rope, string, glue and lacquer to secure things goes against their natural qualities”. (Zhuangzi)

“SNOWBALL” VERSION 3



我的朋友是画家。他和我一样大，都是虎年生的。他画儿画得很好，也很有学问。他会中文，汉字也认识不少。他的中文是自学的。有一天，我在西湖看见他正在画画儿。他一边画画儿，一边还说中文。行人看了都说，他画的国画很好看。我朋友听了说：“哪里，哪里。”我想，一个西方人中国画儿画得这么好是不多的。我不知道中国画和西方画有什么不同，只知道在画法上不一样。中国画儿很好看。几年以前，我在学报上看见过几张他的画儿，都是中国的山水画儿。一张画的是黄河，一张画的是老虎和山。画儿上有他的名字‘道家’两个字。我听说他用‘道家’作他的中国名字。这一点，他和我一样，我们都喜欢道家。可能我们都想作有学问、有知识的人吧？



第10课 你爱人在家吗?



张：谁？

王：我小王。

张：哦，小王。请进！请进！

王：干什么事呢？

张：看报呢？

王：你爱人在家吗？

张：不在，刚出去，上班去了。我今天休息。

王：这是谁的孩子，她太可爱了！

张：是我哥哥的。

王：你哥哥住哪儿？

张：他家的房子离电报大楼不远。明天我跟我爱人去看他。

王：我给我朋友打个电话，可以吗？

张：可以。

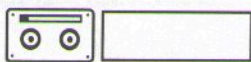


我有一个哥哥。他家离电报大楼不远。他爱人是老师，在中学工作。他们有一个女孩儿。她现在上小学。她很可爱。我很喜欢她。今天我哥哥给我打电话说，他明天休息。我想明天跟我男朋友去看他们。



我有一个哥哥。他家离电报大楼不远。他爱人是老师，在中学工作。他们有一个女孩儿。她现在上小学。她很可爱。我很喜欢她。今天我哥哥给我打电话说，他明天休息。我想明天跟我男朋友去看他们。

NEW WORDS



TIME WORD

明天 míngtiān tomorrow

NOUNS

事 shì thing
报 bào newspaper
哥哥 gēge older brother
房子 fángzi house
电报 diànbào telegram
大楼 dàlóu building
电话 diànhuà telephone

PREPOSITIONS

离 lí from
跟 gēn with, accompanied by
给 gěi to (somebody)

ADVERBS

刚 gāng just now, just this instant
太 tài too

VERBS

请 qǐng please...
进 jìn to enter
干 gàn to do
出去 chūqu to go out (leave)
上班 shàngbān to go to work, to start work
休息 xiūxi to have a rest
住 zhù to live at (reside)
打 dǎ to hit

QUALIFYING VERBS

远 yuǎn to be far
可爱 kěài to be lovely (cute)

GRAMMATICAL WORD




呢 ne [modal particle]




SINOGRAMS


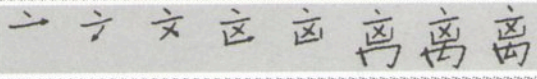
PRESENTATION






请	qǐng	to invite, please. . .	请, 请问
进	jìn	to enter [resultative]	进口, 进来, 进去
干	gàn	to do, to work	能干, 干吗?
	gān	dry	干杯
事	shì	thing, event, affair	有事, 没事, 同事, 喜事, 出事
刚	gāng	just now, this instant	刚刚
出	chū	to go out [resultative]	出口, 出生, 出名, 出国, 日出
休	xiū	to rest, to cease	
息	xī	breath, message	
太	tài	too, very	太阳, 太太
哥	gē	older brother	大哥, 二哥, 哥们儿
住	zhù	to reside, to live at/in [resultative]	住在
房	fáng	house, room	房间, 书房, 房东, 住房
离	lí	away from, to leave	离开
电	diàn	electricity	电工, 电能, 电子, 电车
楼	lóu	building with storeys, pavilion	楼房
远	yuǎn	(to be) far	远东
明	míng	clear; clarity	明白, 说明, 文明, 明星
跟	gēn	with; accompanied by; to follow	
给	gěi	to (somebody); to give to [resultative]	
打	dǎ	to hit	打字机, 打火机, 打开, 打听

哥  可 + 可 two "power"


住  亻 + 主 person radical + "main"
  a person and a torch; a man, master of the house




房  户 + 方 single door radical + "direction"
  a house and the orientation of the compass points


离 離  




电 電  
 日 + 乚 "sun" + a stroke
  rain and lightning going across a field




楼 樓  木 + 米 + 女 "tree" + "rice" + "woman"

远 遠  元 + 辶 "unit" + walking radical

明  日 + 月 "sun" + "moon"
  the light of the day and that of the night

跟  
 跟 + 艮 leg radical + phonetic element
 跟  leg radical + foot and knee cap

给 給  纟 + 合 silk radical + "to close"
  an opening and its cover

打  扌 + 丁 hand radical + "man" (arch. "nail")
  a hand and a nail

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. In the following case the final particle 呢 ne shows the absence of change, the action is taking place, and in the process of being completed.

E. g. 我看报呢。 I am reading the newspaper.

2. Three new prepositions appear: 跟 gēn (preposition of accompaniment), 给 gěi (attributive preposition) and 离 lí (distance preposition). The latter is used in the following way:

A 离 B 很远 A in relation to B (i. e. the distance between them) is far away.

A 离 B 不远 A in relation to B is not far away.

E. g. 我跟他去。 I'm going with him.

我给他买了一本书。 I bought him a book.

中国离法国很远。 China is far from France.

3. In the clause 上班去了 shàngbān qù le, 上班 shàngbān has the value of an adverbial of purpose.

E. g. 他买书去了。 He went to buy (with the purpose of buying) books.

他买东西去了。 He went (with the purpose of) shopping.

小王上课去了。 Little Wang has gone to class.

APPLICATIONS

你干什么呢?

我看报呢。

看

喝

干

想

写

干

看画报

喝茶

打电话

老师的问题

写汉字

吃饭

你今天休息吗?
我今天不休息。

他	明天
你爱人	星期一
你朋友	星期六
你哥哥	今天

你哥哥住哪儿?
他家离电报大楼不远。

你	你们中学
你朋友	茶馆
小王	我家

明天你跟谁去看他?
我跟我爱人去看他。

吃饭	我老师
喝茶	小马
上课	他哥哥

你给谁打电话?
我给我朋友打电话。

他	他爱人
你孩子	他同学
你朋友	他老师

我打个电话,可以吗?
可以。

问个问题
唱杯茶
去你家
坐飞机

CIVILISATION

- Tradition requires that a bride goes to live with her husband's family; the character meaning "to get married" for a woman 嫁 jià is in fact composed of the woman radical combined with an element meaning family.
- A married woman keeps her own surname.
- The policy of birth control in China ("one child per family") is the opposite of the Confucian attitude which holds that children must look to their parents and grandparents. This policy will surely, sooner or later, have significant consequences on the usage of the terms for relatives.
- If there is any brain-racking task in learning Chinese it is not in remembering characters but rather in mastering the names of relatives. The Chinese language in fact has terms that are specific in collaterality and in generation, reflecting the importance of the family and of hierarchy:

哥哥	gēge	older brother
弟弟	dìdi	younger brother
姐姐	jiějie	older sister
妹妹	mèimei	younger sister
奶奶	nǎinai	paternal grandmother
姥姥	lǎolao	maternal grandmother
伯伯	bóbo	uncle, father's older brother
叔叔	shūshu	uncle, father's younger brother



Small seal characters
(221-207 B. C.)

Oracle bone characters
(14-11 B. C.)

Grass style calligraphy
(from 206 B. C.)

Chariot

车(車)

Horse

马(馬)

Fish

鱼(魚)

Grain

雨

Mountain

山

Lightning

电(電)

To pick

采(採)

To notice

见(見)

Bronze characters
(11-3 B. C.)

Regular script
(from 220 A. D.)

Official script
(206 B. C. -220 A. D.)

Running style
calligraphy
(from 220 A. D.)



第 11 课 吃什么菜?



张：你们几位？

王：两个人。

张：请坐！吃什么菜？有鱼，有鸡，有牛肉，有羊肉。

王：来一份儿白菜，一份儿古老肉。

张：吃米饭还是吃饺子？

王：听说你们饭馆的饺子做得不错。我饿了，先来四两饺子吧！

张：你们会用筷子吗？

王：不太会。我用筷子吃得不快。

张：慢慢吃！

王：谢谢！



昨天我跟我朋友吃的是中国饭。我们吃的菜有鱼，有鸡，有牛肉，有羊肉。我还要了一份儿白菜。我朋友还要了一份儿古老肉。昨天我们都很饿。我们吃了四两米饭、六两饺子。我朋友会用筷子，吃得很快。我不会用筷子，吃得很慢。我们吃饭吃了两个小时。



昨天我跟我朋友吃的是中国饭。我们吃的菜有鱼，有鸡，有牛肉，有羊肉。我还要了一份儿白菜。我朋友还要了一份儿古老肉。昨天我们都很饿。我们吃了四两米饭、六两饺子。我朋友会用筷子，吃得很快。我不会用筷子，吃得很慢。我们吃饭吃了两个小时。

NEW WORDS



MEASURE WORDS

位	wèi	[a polite Mw for people]
份儿	fèn	[Mw for parts]
两	liǎng	[one tenth of a <i>jin</i>]

NOUNS

菜	cài	dish (of food)
鱼	yú	fish
鸡	jī	chicken
牛肉	niúròu	beef
羊肉	yáng ròu	mutton or lamb
白菜	báicài	Chinese cabbage
古老肉	gǔlǎoròu	caramelised pork (lit: ancient meat)
米饭	mǐfàn	cooked rice
饺子	jiǎozi	ravioli
饭馆	fànguǎn	restaurant

ADVERBS

先	xiān	first, firstly
慢慢	mànmàn	slowly

VERBS

来	lái	(here) bring me...
做	zuò	to do, to make
饿	è	to be hungry
听说	tīngshuō	to have heard about

QUALIFYING VERBS

快	kuài	to be fast, quick
---	------	-------------------

EXPRESSIONS

不错	búcuò	not bad!
谢谢	xièxiè	thank you!

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

菜	cài	vegetables, dish, food	菜花, 名菜, 饭菜, 点菜, 生菜, 酒菜, 大菜
位	wèi	place, polite; [Mw for people]	地位, 学位, 位子
鱼	yú	fish	鱼子, 鱼肉
鸡	jī	chicken, fowl	田鸡, 火鸡
牛	niú	beef, cow	水牛
肉	ròu	meat	生肉
羊	yáng	sheep, mutton, lamb	山羊
份	fèn	part, portion	份儿饭
白	bái	white	白天, 白话, 白酒, 李白, 白饭
古	gǔ	old, antique	古时, 古文, 古老, 古今中外
米	mǐ	rice	大米, 小米, 米酒
饺	jiǎo	ravioli	水饺
做	zuò	to do, to make	做工
错	cuò	error, erroneous; to make a mis- take, to be wrong [resultative]	错过, 没错, 写错
饿	è	to be hungry	
先	xiān	first, earlier	先生, 先天
快	kuài	fast, quick, happy	快车, 快要, 快乐, 凉快
慢	màn	slow, slowly	慢车, 慢走
谢	xiè	to thank	多谢, 道谢, 面谢

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

菜



艹 + 采



艹 艹 艹 艹 艹 菜

grass radical + "to pick"

grass and a hand above a tree

位



亻 + 立



person radical + "to stand up"

a person and an individual standing up

鱼

魚



ノ ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ 角 鱼 鱼

a fish and its scales

鸡

鷄



又 + 鸟



又 又' 又' 又' 又' 鸡 鸡

"again" + "bird"

a long tailed bird

牛



ノ ㄣ ㄣ 牛

a buffalo head

肉



丨 冂 内 内 肉 肉

meat fibres

羊



a ram's head with two horns

份



亻 + 分 (八 + 刀)



亻 亻 亻 份 份

person radical + "to share out" (division radical + "knife")

a person, to separate with a knife

白








+ 日





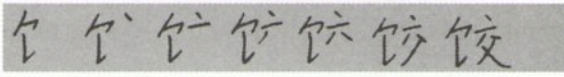



a stroke + "sun"




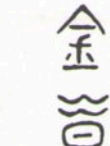
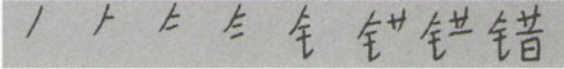

a grain of rice? a finger nail? the sun? a flame?



古  十 + 口 “ten” + “mouth”
  to call up the *distant past* (ten, symbol of many years)




米   an ear of rice with its grains

饺     food radical + “to join”
 a covered rice container and a person with his legs crossed (to “join” up the two edges of a piece of pasta when making *ravioli*? What is eaten at the “junction” of two years?)

做  亻 + 古 + 攴 person radical + “old” + a hand holding a stick radical



错     metal radical + “formerly”
 two chunks of minerals buried in the ground
 to speak of an ancient flood (water and mouth)

饿   亻 + 我 food radical + “I”

先    a foot above a person, to *precede* someone

快  忄 + 夬 heart radical + phonetic element

慢  忄 + 曼 heart radical + phonetic element

谢   word radical + “body” + “thumb”

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The optative verbs 会 huì and 能 néng can be modified by the adverbs 很 hěn and 太 tài, which is also the case for qualifying verbs and verbs of emotion but not for action verbs.
2. Three new measure words appear in this lesson: 位 wèi which adds a nuance of difference compared with 个 gè; 份 fèn views things in parts or copies and 两 liǎng, a unit of weight.

E. g. 这位老师

this teacher (polite and respectful)

三份儿“北京日报”

three copies of *Beijing Daily*

一两酒

a *liang* of alcohol

APPLICATIONS

你们几位?
我们两个人。

三	五
四	六
七	八

你们吃什么菜?
来一份儿白菜。

羊肉	鱼
牛肉	鸡
古老肉	

你们吃米饭还是吃饺子?
吃饺子。

鸡	鱼
牛肉	羊肉
白菜	古老肉

你们要几两饺子?
四两饺子。

米饭	二
饺子	六
酒	三

你们会用筷子吗?
会用。
不会用。

说汉语
写汉字
喝酒

你饿了吗?
我饿了。

他
他们

我的饺子做得怎么样?
做得不错。

鱼	很好
鸡	不太好
牛肉	还可以

慢慢吃!

写	喝
走	说

他吃得快不快?
不快。

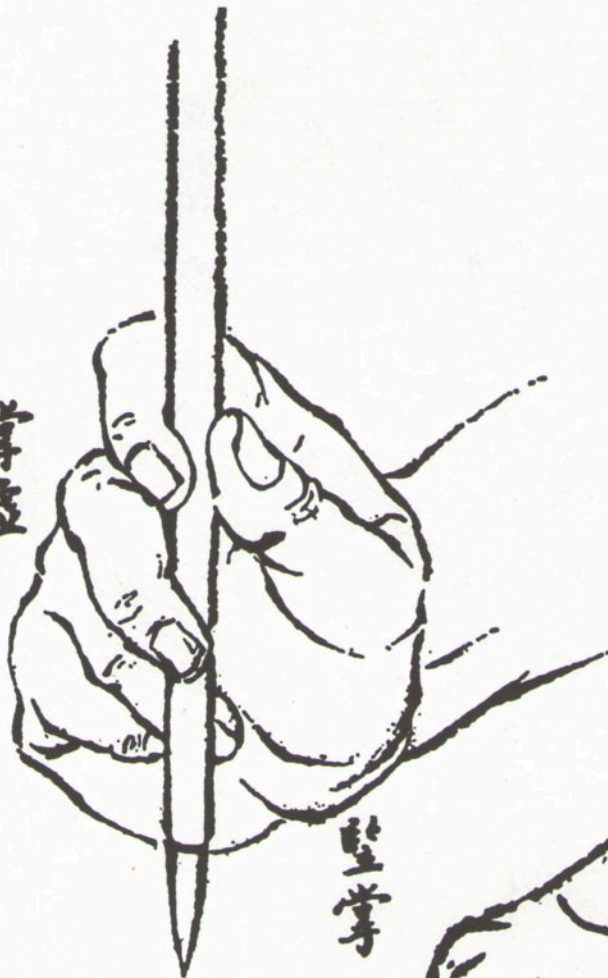
走	慢
说	快
看	多

CIVILISATION

- Chinese cuisine has around ten thousand dishes and on the whole includes four major cuisines (some people distinguish eight and others even twelve!).
 - >> Cantonese cuisine: This is the most famous, most varied and most exported southern cuisine. It often has a sweet flavour and is famous for its 点心 diǎnxin or *dimsums*, small steamed snacks. “The Cantonese eat everything that flies except aeroplanes and everything with four legs except tables”. This saying refers to dishes such as weasel, snake and even monkey brains. One of its most famous dishes is “The battle of the tiger and the dragon”, made with wild cat and snake.
 - >> Northern cuisine: Represented above all by recipes from Shandong, this cuisine is characterised by its salty flavour and the use of spring onions. It includes Beijing roast duck which is not a dish but a whole meal of duck in itself: the giblets, the skin (roasted over glowing cinders of jujube wood and eaten with green onions; special paste and pancakes), the meat itself and capping off the meal a soup made from the bones or tongues. Rice is the cereal of the South but wheat dominates the North (ravioli, steamed bread and noodles).
 - >> Sichuan cuisine: heavily seasoned.
 - >> Shanghai cuisine: known for its soups and fish dishes.
 - >> Chinese cuisine is a “philosophical” cuisine. It must respect the universal alternation of Yin and Yang. This occurs between the hot and cold, light and spicy flavours, soft consistencies (meat stuffing) and crunchy consistencies (water chestnut, crunchy chicken skin), light colours (fish) and lively colours (green onions).
- As each dish has its own norms, in a restaurant it is not possible to ask that the meat be cooked in a certain way.
- Rice is an accompaniment. It is usually served after a meal and is even absent from receptions.
- Shark fins have no particular taste of their own, they are appreciated for their consistency when cooked. Carrots are not appreciated for their taste but rather for their colour and for the fact that they can be carved.
- The French expression “*tchin – tchin!*” comes from the Chinese 请, 请 qǐng, qǐng (“Please, please!”).

一指撮 二指押 三指鈎
四指格 五指抵

掌虛



堅掌



指實

平腕





第 12 课 有买票的吗?



张：有买票的吗？

王：买两张到天安门票。多少钱一张？

张：五毛。

王：给您一块。从这儿到天安门有几站？

张：三站。

王：请问，到北京医院怎么坐车？

张：下了车再坐二十二路汽车。

王：二十二路车站在哪儿？

张：下车后，往前走，就是二十二路车站。

王：到北京医院在哪儿下车？

张：前门。



我知道到天安门怎么坐车。你从这儿坐三三二路汽车坐十站，在西四下。下了车再坐二十二路，在天安门下。下车后，往前走就是天安门。从这儿到西四的票是五毛，从西四到天安门也是五毛。

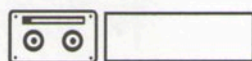


我知道到天安门怎么坐车。你从这儿坐三三二路汽车坐十站，在西四下。下了车再坐二十二路，在天安门下。下车后，往前走就是天安门。从这儿到西四的票是五毛，从西四到天安门也是五毛。

NEW WORDS

MEASURE WORDS

张	zhāng
毛	máo
分	fēn
块	kuài
站	zhàn
路	lù



[Mw for objects with a flat surface]
mao (a tenth of the money unit yuan)
fen (a hundredth of a yuan)
 yuan, money unit
 [Mw for distance between two stations/stops]
 [Mw for bus routes]

NOUNS

天安门	Tiān'ānmén	Heavenly Peace Gate
钱	qián	money
医院	yīyuàn	hospital
车	chē	car, vehicle
汽车	qìchē	bus, car
车站	chēzhàn	bus stop, bus station
前	qián	in front
前门	Qiánmén	Qianmen [name of a place]
西四	Xīsì	Xisi [name of a place]

PREPOSITIONS

从	cóng	from, since
往	wǎng	towards

ADVERB

就	jiù	so, therefore
---	-----	---------------

VERBS

给	gěi	to give to
下	xià	to get off

EXPRESSION

请问	qǐngwèn	Excuse me; May I ask...
----	---------	-------------------------

CONSTRUCTION

…后…	hòu	after
-----	-----	-------




SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION



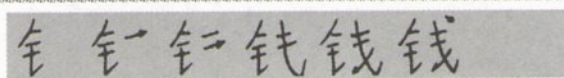

安	ān	peace, tranquillity	西安, 不安, 长安
门	mén	door, gate	门口, 看门, 开门, 出门
钱	qián	money	有钱, 花钱, 现钱
毛	máo	hair, <i>mao</i> (one tenth of a yuan), [surname]	羊毛
分	fēn fèn	to divide up; <i>fen</i> (one hundredth of a yuan), minute part	分开, 分工, 分机, 分会, 十分 知识分子, 过分
块	kuài	piece, unit of currency	一块儿, 方块字
从	cóng	from, following, since	从来, 从小
站	zhàn	to be standing up; station	站长, 火车站, 前站
医	yī	medicine; to cure, to treat	医学, 医生, 中医, 西医
院	yuàn	internal courtyard, establishment	院子, 院长, 学院 法院, 住院
路	lù	road, [Mw for bus routes]	路过, 路上, 道路, 马路, 十字路口
汽	qì	steam, gas	汽水
后	hòu	after, behind	后边, 后来, 后天 后年, 今后, 以后 前后, 先后, 走后门
往	wǎng	towards, in the direction of, (in the) past; to go	往后, 往下 往往, 来往
前	qián	in front of, before	前天, 前年, 以前, 往前, 从前
就	jiù	so, therefore	

SINOGRAMS





MEMORY TECHNIQUE

安  宀 + 女 roof radical + "woman"
  a woman under a roof, symbol of *stability*





门  門  
 門 a double door


钱  錢  
 钅 + 戈 metal radical + phonetic element



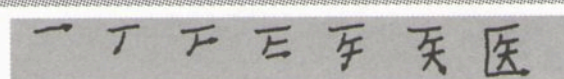



毛   
 彡 hair




分   八 + 刀 eight (division radical) + "knife"
  *separate* by using a knife


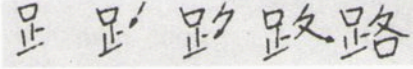



块  塊  土 + 夬 "earth" + "phonetic element"


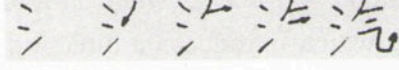



从  從  人 + 人 two people
  a person *following* another

站  立 + 占 "standing up" + "to foresee"


医  醫  
 匚 + 矢 graphic element + "arrow"
  *medicine*, the field of arrow wounds


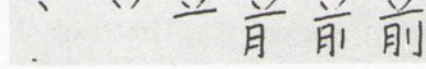



院  阝 + 完 hill radical + "to finish"
  steps on a hill, a chief under a roof
 (see "a prince's residence surrounded by the wall radical", arch.)


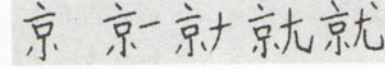

路   足 足 跂 跂 路
 阝 + 夕 + 口 leg radical + reverse foot radical + mouth
  the leg and a foot in front of an opening

汽   氵 氵 汽 汽 汽
 氵 + 气 water radical + "air"
  water and the steam rising from cooking rice

后 後   丿 丿 尸 后
  a child behind an adult

往  彳 + 主 "to make a step with the left foot" + "main"

前   丷 前 前 前
 丷 + 月 + 刂 graphic element + "moon" + knife radical
  the foot, symbol of movement and a boat

就   京 京 京 就 就
 京 + 尤 "capital" + phonetic element

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. Six new measure words: 张 *zhāng*, for objects with a flat surface (sheets of paper, beds etc.); 块 *kuài*, 毛 *máo* and 分 *fēn*, related to money (块 *kuài* also being a more general measure word meaning a piece of. . .); 站 *zhàn* for the distance between two stations and 路 *lù* for bus routes.

E. g. 三张票	three tickets
这张报	this newspaper
一分(钱)	one <i>fēn</i>
一毛(钱)	one <i>máo</i>
两块(钱)	two <i>kuài</i> (two yuan)
一站(地)	one station (the distance between two stations)
一路车	bus No. 1

2. Two new prepositions: 从 *cóng*, which introduces a point of departure in space or time and 往 *wǎng* which introduces a direction.

E. g. 从一月到六月	from January to June
从北京到上海	from Beijing to Shanghai
往北走	to go towards the north

3. In Chinese the expression “How much does. . . cost?” doesn’t need a verb.

E. g. 这本书多少钱?	How much does this book cost? (This book/how much money?)
这本书五块。	This book costs five yuan. (This book/five yuan.)

4. The adverb 就 *jiù* is used to stress the arrival of a new situation.

E. g. 往前走，就是	Go forward and (therefore) the number 22 bus stop
二十二路车站。	will be just there.
你不来，我就去。	If you don’t come, I’ll go.
	If you don’t come, <i>therefore</i> , I’ll go.

APPLICATIONS

有买票的吗?
有,买两张到天安门的票。

一	前门
三	西四
四	北京医院

多少钱一张?
五毛。

五分	七分
五毛	八毛
一块	三块二

从这儿到天安门有几站?
三站。

西四	北京医院
那儿	电报大楼
西四	天安门

请问,到北京医院怎么走?
坐二十二路汽车。

天安门	十
电报大楼	四
北京医院	四十四

二十二路车站在哪儿?
往前走就是。

一	东
三三一	北
二十	南

到北京医院在哪儿下车?
前门。

天安门	前门
电报大楼	西四

CIVILISATION

- On the Day of the dead or 清明 Qīngmíng (pure brightness) the custom is to burn false paper money in front of the grave so that it will reach the deceased and be of use during their long voyage.
- In ancient times the first money was cowry shells. This explains the presence of the shell radical in characters referring to wealth.
- The character 钱 qián, “money”, is composed of the metal radical and a phonetic element which also seems to have a connotation of depreciation. It is also found in 贱 jiàn “despicable” and in 浅 qiǎn “superficial”. The northern Chinese traditional idea of money is reflected in the character itself.
- The Chinese invented paper money between the ninth and tenth centuries A. D., more than 800 years before it appeared in the Western world. This didn't fail to grab the attention of Marco Polo who wrote, “All these pieces of paper are issued with as much reverence and authority as though they were made of pure gold and silver. Different officials in charge of the printing write their name and affix their seal on every note.”
- The official name of Chinese money is Renminbi. The monetary unit is 元 yuán; 角 jiǎo and 分 fēn correspond respectively to one tenth and one hundredth of a yuan. In colloquial Chinese yuan and *jiao* are called 块 kuài and 毛 máo respectively.
- Other currencies include:

法郎	fǎláng	the franc
美元	měiyuán	the U. S. dollar
日元	rìyuán	the yen
英磅	yīngbàng	the pound sterling
港币	gǎngbì	the Hong Kong dollar
马克	mǎkè	the mark
里拉	lǐlā	the lira
卢布	lúbù	the rouble

“SNOWBALL” VERSION 4



昨天我的一个同事刚从国外得了学位回来。今天他请我和我爱人，还有几位有地位的朋友去一家饭馆吃饭。听说这家饭馆不错，有不少名菜。饭馆离火车站不远，在一个十字路口东边。我们到的时候，我看见我们学院的院长、法院的院长、院长太太都来了。有两位先生和一位女士我不认识。我朋友说，一位是他的房东，一位是学电子的，那位女士是房东太太，她是医生。今天是喜事，我们先喝了点儿酒和汽水。喝酒的时候，大家都和我朋友干杯。后来，我们点菜。我点了一份儿火鸡大菜，我爱人点了一份儿鱼子和一份儿田鸡。院长点的是水牛肉，他太太点的是水饺。医生不喜欢吃肉，点的是米饭和生菜。知识分子在一块儿吃饭喜欢说话，一边吃，一边说，吃得很慢。

吃完饭以后，我们到他家坐了坐。他住的不是楼房，是一个院子。他的书房很大。从他的书房可以看到大海和日出。他住的房子不错。看来，我的这位同事在国外很能干。

庄子
和
蝴蝶



SUPPLEMENTARY TEXT 2



Zhuangzi and the Butterfly

庄子和蝴蝶

有一天,庄子在花园里睡着了。他做了一个梦,梦见他是一只很好看的蝴蝶。它飞到东,飞到西,最后飞累了,就睡着了。蝴蝶也做了一个梦,梦见它是庄子。这时候,庄子醒了。他不知道他现在是真的庄子呢,还是蝴蝶梦里的庄子?他也不知道是他梦见了蝴蝶呢,还是蝴蝶梦见了他?

NEW WORDS

庄子	Zhuāngzǐ	(ancient Daoist philosopher)
蝴蝶	húdié	butterfly
花园	huāyuán	garden
睡着	shuìzháo	to fall asleep
梦见	mèngjian	to dream that
只	zhī	[Mw for certain animals]
它	tā	it
最后	zuìhòu	finally
累	lèi	to be tired
醒	xǐng	to wake up
真	zhēn	really; true

SINOGRAMS

庄	zhuāng	village, [surname]
蝴	hú	butterfly
蝶	dié	butterfly
睡	shuì	to sleep
梦	mèng	dream

PROVERBS

● 风吹草动

When the wind blows the grass moves.

● 唇亡齿寒

Without lips, teeth would get cold.

● 早饭吃得饱,午饭吃得好,晚饭吃得少

Eat one's fill at breakfast, eat well at lunch and eat little at dinner.

● 树欲静而风不止

Trees wait for the calm but, nonetheless, the wind keeps blowing.

● 声东击西

Make noise in the east to attack in the west.

● 当局者迷,旁观者清

Whoever watches a game of chess sees more clearly than the players.

● 吃水不忘打井人

When you drink water, don't forget those who digged the well.

PART 3

Sequences

3.1 People

3.2 Studies

3.3 China

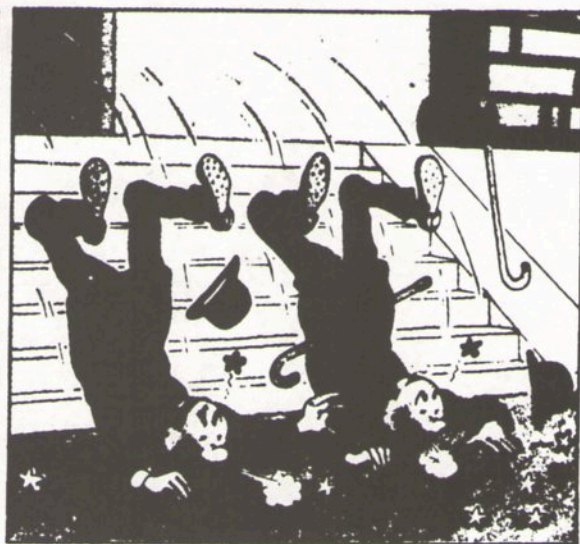
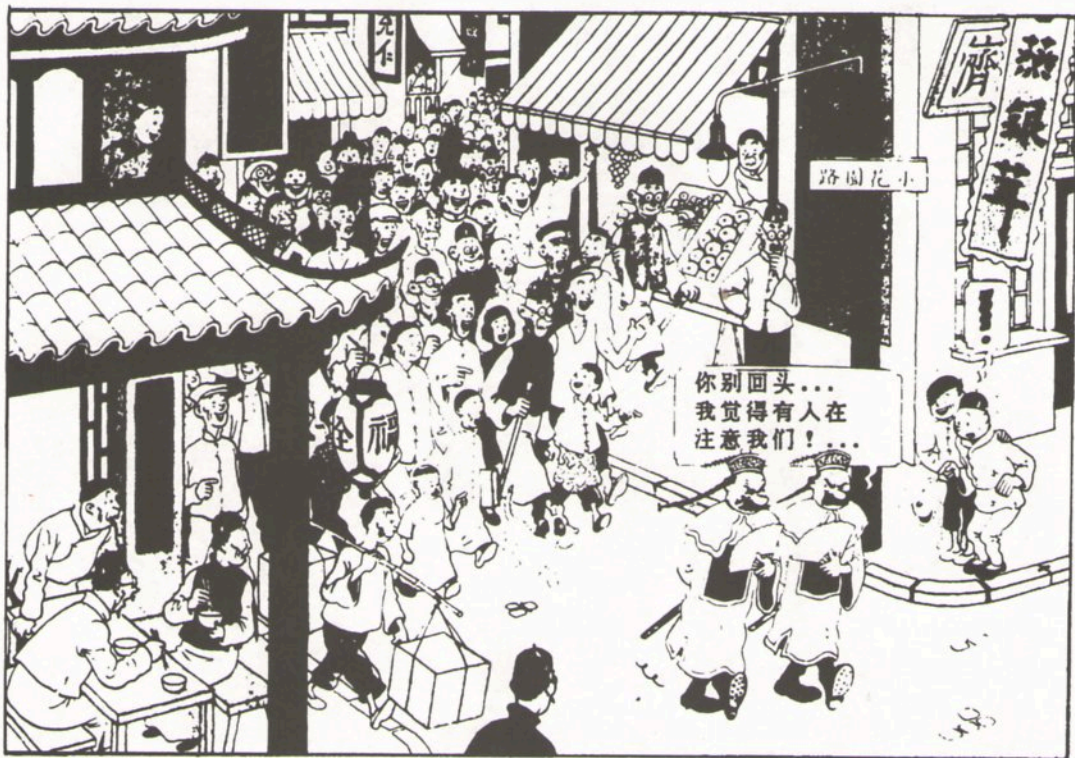
“Snowball” Version 5

3.4 The House

3.5 Shopping

3.6 Transport

“Snowball” Version 6



© Hergé / Casterman

第13课 看什么呢?



关放活：看什么呢？

包更声：《丁丁》。刚才我父亲在对面那个商店买的。

关放活：谁写的？

包更声：我不知道。你看过这本书吗？

关放活：看过。你喜欢杜本和杜朋先生吗？

包更声：他们不是主要人物，可是我最喜欢他们。

关放活：好像杜本比杜朋大一两岁。

包更声：不，他们两个人一样大，可是杜本比杜朋高一点儿。

关放活：这本书，你明天能看完吗？我母亲想看看。

包更声：可能看得完。如果我今天晚上看完了，明天早上就给你。

关放活：这样，我母亲会很高兴。

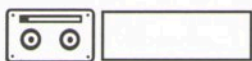


我很喜欢《丁丁》这本书，也很喜欢丁丁这个人。我和我的父母都看过这本书。我们看的《丁丁》是法文的，不是中文的。中文的我现在还看不懂。我父亲和母亲最喜欢杜本和杜朋先生。这两个人物一样大，杜本比杜朋高一点儿。他们是丁丁的好朋友。



我很喜欢《丁丁》这本书，也很喜欢丁丁这个人。我和我的父母都看过这本书。我们看的《丁丁》是法文的，不是中文的。中文的我现在还看不懂。我父亲和母亲最喜欢杜本和杜朋先生。这两个人物一样大，杜本比杜朋高一点儿。他们是丁丁的好朋友。

NEW WORDS



TIME WORDS

刚才	gāngcái	right now
晚上	wǎnshang	evening
早上	zǎoshang	morning

MEASURE WORD

本	běn	[Mw for bound objects (books etc.)]
---	-----	--------------------------------------

NOUNS

关	Guān	[surname]
放活	Fànghuó	[given name]
包	Bāo	[surname]
更生	Gēngshēng	[given name]
丁丁	Dīngdīng	Tintin
父亲	fùqin	father
商店	shāngdiàn	shop
杜本	Dùběn	Thomson
杜朋	Dùpéng	Thompson
先生	xiānsheng	Mister
人物	rénwù	character (in a literary work)
母亲	mǔqin	mother

LOCATIVE WORD

对面	duìmiàn	opposite
----	---------	----------

CONJUNCTIONS

和	hé	and
可是	kěshì	but

PREPOSITION

比	bǐ	compared to
---	----	-------------

ADVERBS

最	zuì	the most
一样	yíyàng	the same
这样	zhèyàng	in this way

VERBS

好像	hǎoxiàng	it seems...
会	huì	(here) it is possible that... , it may be that...

QUALIFYING VERBS

主要	zhǔyào	main, to be (the most) important
高	gāo	to be tall
高兴	gāoxìng	to be happy

CONSTRUCTION

如果...就	rúguǒ...jiù	if... then...
--------	-------------	---------------

SINOGRAMS



PRESENTATION



关	guān	to close, to be concerned; [surname]	有关, 海关, 山海关, 年关
放	fàng	to graze, to put, to place	放牛, 放火, 放大, 放学, 开放
活	huó	alive; life; to live	活儿, 干活儿, 生活
包	bāo	packet, [surname]; to wrap	包子, 书包, 钱包
更	gēng	to change; night watch(es)	更生, 更正, 打更
	gèng	more	更好, 更喜欢
声	shēng	noise, voice	声明, 声学, 四声
丁	dīng	adult man, diced food	肉丁, 鸡丁
才	cái	talent; just now, just, only	才能, 天才, 人才, 口才
父	fù	father	父子
亲	qīn	close (relatives)	亲爱, 亲人, 亲自
对	duì	right, exact, opposite	对立, 对方, 对象, 对话
面	miàn	face, side, flour	面子, 面包, 面包车 一方面…一方面… 方面, 里面, 白面, 见面, 出面
商	shāng	business, commerce	商人


店	diàn	shop	书店, 饭店, 肉店, 酒店
杜	dù	[surname]	
和	hé	and; with; harmony	
主	zhǔ	master (owner of property); main	主人, 主张, 民主, 地主, 自主, 店主, 作主, 天主教
物	wù	beings, matter	生物, 生物学, 文物
象	xiàng	elephant, image; to resemble	想象, 现象, 对象
比	bǐ	to compare, compared to	比一比, 比方说, 对比
高	gāo	tall, elevated	高中, 高楼
母	mǔ	mother	母语, 母鸡, 父母, 字母
如	rú	if, like	比如, 不如
果	guǒ	fruit consequence	水果, 干果, 后果
晚	wǎn	late, to be late, evening	晚报, 晚饭, 晚会, 晚安, 晚年, 晚班
早	zǎo	early, to be early; morning	早饭, 早安
兴	xìng	enthusiasm	




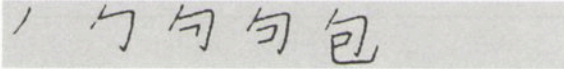
SINOGRAMS




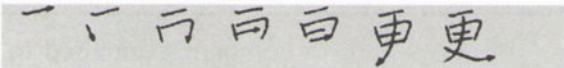
MEMORY TECHNIQUE




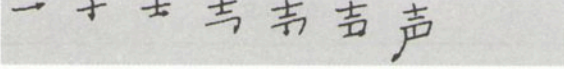
关 關  + 天 two points + “sky”
 關 a wooden bar used to *close* a double door

放  方 + 攴 “direction” + hand holding a stick radical
 放 to graze cattle with a stick in a place






活  氵 + 舌 water radical + “tongue”

包     a child *wrapped* in its mother's womb

更     a hand holding a poker to *change* a pot

声 聲     an ear listening to musical stones being played by a hand

丁   a nail (derived sense: adult *man*)

才     shortened form of 木
 a young shoot sticking out of the ground

父



a hand holding an axe, symbol of authority

亲

親



立 + 木

“standing up” + “tree”

对

對



又 + 寸

right hand radical + “thumb”

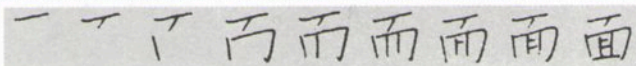


human action concerning the growth of vegetation

面



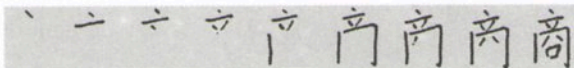
a face showing the eye



商



a mouth and a tongue under a roof (to debate)



店



广 + 占

“vast” (shelter radical) + “foretell”

杜



木 + 土

“tree” + “earth”



a tree and the earth, a wild pear tree

和



禾 + 口

“cereal” + “mouth”



flutes and a mouth, harmony

主



丶 + 王

a point + “king”



a torch for guidance

物



丩 𠂇 牛 𠂇 牛 牛 物 物 物



牛 + 勿

cattle radical + negation



𠂇

cattle and a ploughshare lifting up the soil

象



𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 象 象 象 象 象



an elephant and its trunk

象 象

比



𠂇 匕 匕 比 比



匕 匕

two people side by side

高



高

a tall construction

母



𠂇 母 母 母



母

a drawing of a woman showing maternal breasts

如



女 + 口

“woman” + “mouth”



如

a person genuflecting, conforming with an order

果



日 + 木

“sun” + “tree”



果

fruit on a tree

晚



日 日 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 晚



日 + 兔

“sun” + “to avoid”



晚

the sun and a person with a hat

早



日 + 十

“sun” + “ten”



早

the sun above the earth, early morning

兴

興



兴

two hands lifting a heavy object

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The comparative:

1.1 The comparative (of superiority) (“A is bigger than B”) is constructed in the following way: A 比 bǐ B + QVb

E. g. 书比本子贵。

A book is more expensive than an exercise book.

(Book/compared to/ exercise book/is expensive)

1.2 If the comparison contains a measure, the original construction does not change: A 比 B + QVb + measure

E. g. 书比本子贵五分。

The book costs five *fen* more than the exercise book.

我比他大一些。

I am a year older than he.

1.3 The comparison of equality is constructed in the following way: A 跟 gēn (和 hé) B + 一样 yíyàng + QVb

E. g. 我跟(和)你一样高。 I am as tall as you.

1.4 The comparison of inferiority (A is less than B) is constructed in the following way: A 没有 méiyǒu B + QVb

E. g. 法国没有中国大。

France is smaller than China.

2. The repetition of an action verb (Vb + Vb or Vb + 一 yí + Vb) indicates a lessening of that action.

E. g. 看(一)看。

have a quick look

听(一)听。

listen a little. . .

APPLICATIONS

你比他大吗?
我没有他大。
我比他小。

小王	小马	高
杜本	杜朋	小
你爱人	你	大

你比他大几岁?
我比他大三岁。

小	两
大	十
小	一两

你的书比他多几本?
我的书比他多三本。

地图	张
画报	本
票	张
报	张

中国人口比法国多吗?
中国人口比法国多。

法国人口	日本	多
美国	中国	大
中国茶	日本茶	好
飞机	火车	快
长江	黄河	长
天安门	前门	远

杜本跟杜朋一样大吗?
他们一样大。

你的书	他的	多
法国	四川	大
你的孩子	你	高
长江	黄河	长

你想看看吗?
我想看看。

听听
说说
休息休息

CIVILISATION

- Chinese cartoons or 连环画 liánhuánhuà (chain images) are normally presented in frames with a format of 12.5 × 10 in., one frame per page. Some of them are inspired by traditional painting techniques, others use foreign literary words such as *The Three Musketeers* or *The Count of Monte Cristo* by Alexandre Dumas.
- Although *The Adventures of Tintin* have had real success in China, of the Asterix series only *Asterix in England* has been translated, of all the famous albums of Goscinny and Uderzo.

A TRANSLATION ERROR



“Slip! slip! Is it expensive?”
“My tailor is rich.”



“Are slippers cheap?”
“Yes, here all the tailors are rich.”



鴻禧

福

國恩家慶

第14课 这个字什么意思？



关：包更声，这个字是用钢笔写的吗？

包：不是，是用毛笔写的。

关：这个字怎么发音？什么意思？

包：‘错’是‘不错’的‘错’，是‘不对’的意思。

关：你觉得汉字难写吗？

包：很难写。我写的字又大又难看。

关：你们有书法课吗？

包：有，每星期三下午上书法课。你看，这是一些讲书法的书。

关：有人说每天写毛笔字对身体很好，是吗？

包：是。关放活，你为什么不上学书法呢？

关：我很想学，不过我太忙，没有时间。

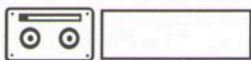


我们每星期三上书法课。我很喜欢中国书法。我买了一些讲书法的书。这是我写的书法。这个字是中国的‘中’，那个字是北京的‘京’。这些都是用毛笔写的。我觉得中国书法很好看，不过很难学。



我们每星期三上书法课。我很喜欢中国书法。我买了一些讲书法的书。这是我写的书法。这个字是中国的‘中’，那个字是北京的‘京’。这些字都是用毛笔写的。我觉得中国书法很好看，不过很难学。

NEW WORDS



CONJUNCTION

不过 búguò but

TIME WORDS

下午 xiàwǔ afternoon

NUMERATIVE WORDS

每 měi every

MEASURE WORDS

些 xiē some [Mw for an undetermined quantity]

NOUNS

意思	yìsi	meaning
钢笔	gāngbǐ	fountain pen
毛笔	máobǐ	brush
书法	shūfǎ	calligraphy
身体	shēntǐ	health

PREPOSITION

对	duì	for, concerning. . .
---	-----	----------------------

ADVERB

又...又...	yòu...yòu	at the same time as
----------	-----------	---------------------

VERBS

发音	fāyīn	to pronounce; pronunciation
觉得	juéde	to feel that, to find that
讲	jiǎng	to talk about. . .

QUALIFYING VERBS

错	cuò	to be wrong
对	duì	to be right
难写	nánxiě	to be difficult to write
难看	nánkàn	to be ugly
难学	nánxué	to be difficult to learn
忙	máng	to be busy

INTERROGATIVE



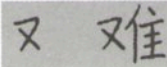
为什么	wèishénme	Why?
-----	-----------	------

SINOGRAMS




PRESENTATION


发	fā	to emit	发明,发生,发现, 发票,出发,发红 发行,百发百中
音	yīn	sound	音乐,音乐家,口音, 语音,回音,声音, 男高音,男中音,
意	yì	opinion, meaning, intention	意见,意中人,同意,生 意,好意,万事如意
思	sī	thought	思想,思想家,有意思, 没有意思,不好意思
钢	gāng	steel	
笔	bǐ	writing brush	笔画,笔名
觉	jué	to feel, to be aware of	听觉,自觉
	jiào	a short sleep, a nap	睡觉
难	nán	difficult	难过,难听,难得,难道
又	yòu	again	
每	měi	every	每天,每年
午	wǔ	the seventh hour (from 11.00 to 13.00), midday	午饭,上午,中午
些	xiē	some (Mw for unknown quantities)	
讲	jiǎng	to talk, to talk about, to explain, to tell	讲话
身	shēn	body	身边,身分,身上,本身, 出身
体	tǐ	body, form, model	体重,主体,字体 大体,立体声
为	wèi	for	为了,认为,以为,行为,
	wéi	to act, to become	作为,一分为二
忙	máng	to be busy	忙人,忙东忙西



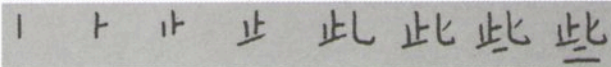
又  又 the right hand


难 難   又 + 隹  又 难
the right hand radical + "short tailed bird"



 鷩 a mythical bird

每   一 + 母  每 每 每 每
two strokes + "mother"
a mother with a hair pin



午  申 a pole



些   止 + 匕 + 二  止 此 此 此 些
foot radical + reverse person radical (此 cǐ) + "two"

讲 講  讠 + 井 word radical + "a well"

身   身 a pregnant woman

体 體  亻 + 本 person radical + "root"

为 為   为 为
a hand leading an elephant

忙   忄 + 亡 heart radical + "to die"

这个字是什么意思？
是‘不对’的意思。

高兴
难看

很高
不懂

你觉得汉字难写吗？
很难写。

他可爱
中国书法好看
法国酒好喝
中国饭好吃

这是一些讲书法的书吗？
是的。

汉字
酒
茶

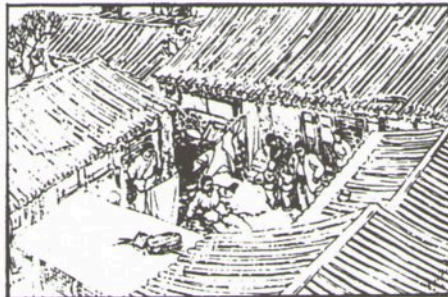
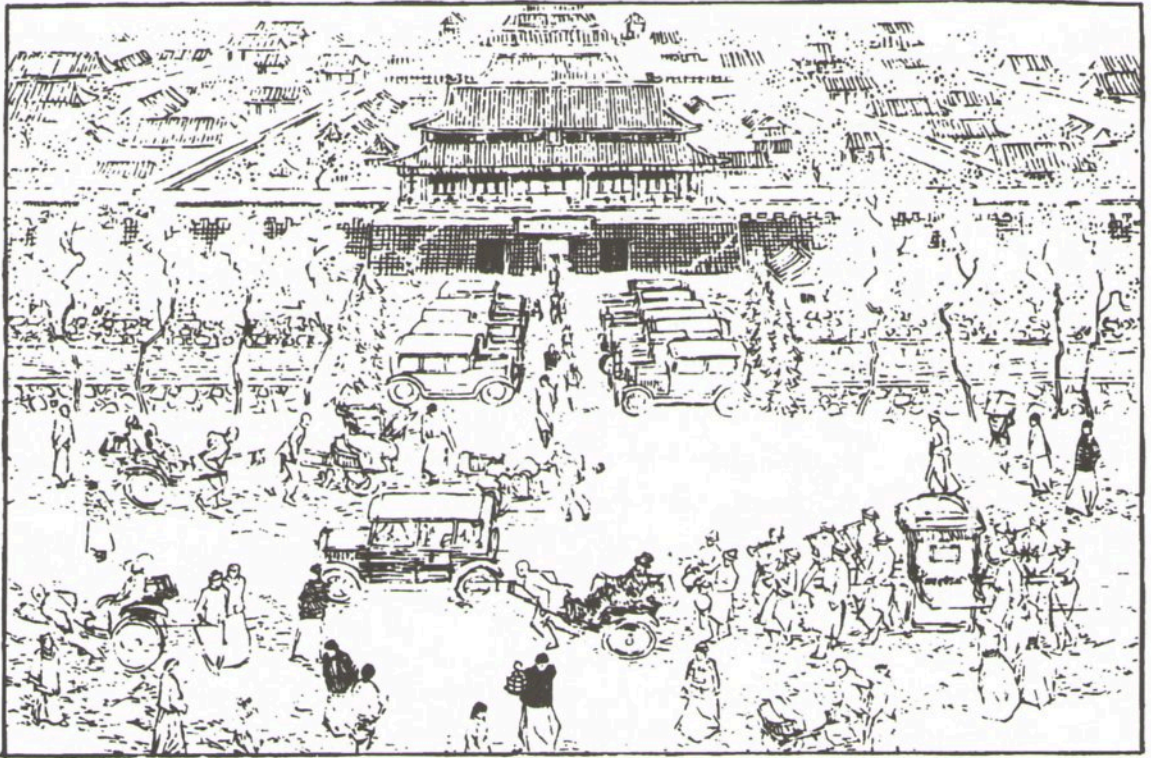
你为什么不学书法？
我太忙。

汉语
法语
日文

没有时间
很忙
不喜欢

CIVILISATION

- Tradition holds that a person from the 26th century B. C. “invented” Chinese writing while contemplating the movement of heavenly bodies and observing the prints of birds and animals on the ground.
- From primitive drawings to present day characters, Chinese writing has gone through many stages. First there came the oracle bone characters which appeared in the second millenium before Christ. The soothsayers of the era inscribed questions on pieces of tortoise shell or on the shoulder blades of sheep or deer. They then held them over a fire and received their answer by interpreting the cracks that formed. Next came characters written on bronze, then about 2000 years ago “small seal characters”, the “official characters” and then finally modern writing appeared.
- The evolution in form of Chinese characters through the ages can be explained by the changes of writing material and instuments: from tortoise shell to paper, via bronze and bamboo strips on the one hand, and from a metallic blade to a brush via the etcher’s needle on the other.
- Calligraphy is a complete art. There are different styles of calligraphy just as there are different styles of painting. The regular style, with its clear strokes reminds one of architecture or the sitting position. The cursive style, more in motion, invokes walking. The free style or “grass style” is more subjective, more instinctive. It is the style or the movement that carries the structure, suggesting running, a gushing stream or drifting clouds.
- “The four treasures of a scholar’s study” are the main materials and instruments used for writing with a brush. The brush is made from goat, deer, hare or mouse hair; the ink which comes in the form of small rods must have a nice gloss and a pleasant fragrance; the paper must be absorbent and finally the ink stone must be soft to the touch and produce a pleasant sound when the ink stick hits it.



第15课 北京,你去过几次?



关: 中国北方和南方是不是区别很大?

包: 是区别很大。天气、语言、饭菜都不一样。

关: 听说南方常常下雨,南方人说话有时候听不懂。北方冬天太冷,春天风很大。

包: 对了。不过北京的秋天最好,不冷也不热。我很喜欢北京的秋天。

关: 北京是一个古老的城市吗?

包: 是的,也是中国的文化中心。

关: 北京,你去过几次?

包: 两次。北京有天安门广场、北海公园、长城。

关: 我知道。有人说还是南方山水好看。

包: 可是‘不到长城非好汉’!

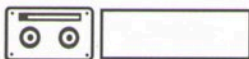


我去过很多次中国。我知道中国北方和南方区别很大。天气、语言、饭菜都不一样。北方冬天很冷,春天风很大。南方常常下雨。中国北方人说话好懂。南方人说话,有时候听不懂。中国南方山水很好看。北京,我去过三次。我很喜欢这个城市。北京是一个古老的城市,也是中国的文化中心。北京的秋天最好,不冷也不热。北京有天安门广场、北海公园和长城。



……北京,我去过三次。我很喜欢这个城市。北京是一个古老的城市,也是中国的文化中心。北京的秋天最好,不冷也不热。北京有天安门广场、北海公园和长城。

NEW WORDS



MEASURE WORD

次

cì

time (e. g. first time, etc.)

NOUNS

区别	qūbié	difference
天气	tiānqì	weather
语言	yǔyán	language
饭菜	fàn cài	food, dish
冬天	dōngtiān	winter
春天	chūntiān	spring
风	fēng	wind
秋天	qiūtiān	autumn
城市	chéngshì	city
文化	wénhuà	culture
中心	zhōngxīn	centre
广场	guǎngchǎng	public square
北海	Běihǎi	Beihai Park
公园	gōngyuán	park
长城	Chángchéng	the Great Wall
山水	shānshuǐ	scenery
好汉	hǎohàn	brave person (lit. a good man)

ADVERB

常常 chángcháng often

NEGATION

非 fēi not

VERBS

下雨 xiàyǔ to rain

QUALIFYING VERBS

冷 lěng to be cold

热 rè to be hot

古老 gǔlǎo to be old

EXPRESSION

有时候 yǒu shíhou sometimes


SINOGRAMS



PRESENTATION

次	cì	time (order); of poor quality	次要, 上次, 下次
区	qū	zone, district; to mark off a boundary	区分, 地区, 山区
别	bié	other; don't	别的, 别人, 分别, 个别
气	qì	air, breath	气候, 生气, 打气, 和气, 小气
言	yán	word, language	语言学, 语言学家, 方言, 发言, 文言, 前言
常	cháng	often, ordinary, common	常用, 常见, 不常, 日常生活, 正常
雨	yǔ	rain	小雨
冷	lěng	cold, to be cold	干冷
春	chūn	the spring	
风	fēng	wind	风水, 作风
秋	qiū	autumn	中秋
热	rè	hot, to be hot	热爱, 热能, 干热
城	chéng	wall, city	进城, 城里, 古城
市	shì	market, city	市场, 市长, 黑市
化	huà	to transform, to change	化学, 美化, 老化
心	xīn	heart	心里, 心中, 心事, 小心, 点心, 知心, 放心, 热心, 市中心, 关心, 一心一意, 三心二意
广	guǎng	vast, wide	广东, 广西, 广大
场	chǎng	ground, site	飞机场, 商场, 立场
公	gōng	public, common to all, male (of animals)	公安, 公里, 公分, 公法, 公牛, 公鸡, 公开, 公用
园	yuán	garden	花园, 乐园, 果园
非	fēi	not, wrong	非常, 是非




SINOGRAMS





MEMORY TECHNIQUE



次  冫 + 欠 ice radical + person with open mouth radical


 二  兄 the number two and the older brother, the rank in brotherhood

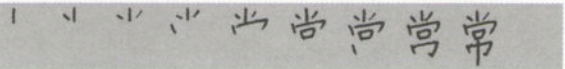
区  區  囿  品 objects enclosed in a warehouse




别  另 + 刀 “another” + knife radical
 另  刀 separate something using a knife

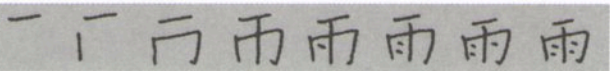
气  氣  汽 see 汽
 气  氣 steam rising from rice being cooked


言  言  舌 the tongue sticking out of the mouth



常  尚 + 巾 phonetic element + “cloth”







雨  雨  雨  雨 the sky, the clouds and rain drops



冷  冫 + 令 ice radical + “to arrange”

春  春  春 vegetation springing up from the earth with the sun’s help

风  風  凡 + 虫 phonetic element (凡) + “insect”
 凡  虫 ordinary, all (凡) and an insect

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The verb 是 shì placed before a preposition means “it is true that...”.

E. g. 南方和北方是区别很大。

It is true that there are great differences between the North and the South.

今天,天气是很冷。

It really is cold today.

他是学汉语。

It is true that he is learning Chinese.

南方和北方是不是区别很大?

Is it true that there are great differences between the North and the South?

南方和北方区别不是很大。

It is not really true to say that there are great differences between the North and the South.

2. 2.1 次 cì is a verbal measure word just as 一点儿 yìdiǎnr can be. It is placed after the verb.

E. g. 我去过两次。

I've already been there twice.

你喝一点儿吧!

Go on, drink a bit!

2.2 When its object is a personal pronoun the verbal measure word is placed after it. In all other cases it comes after the verb.

E. g. 我看过他一次。

I've already seen him once.

我去过两次中国。

I've already been to China twice.

APPLICATIONS

中国南方和北方是不是区别很大?
是区别很大。

中国饭和法国饭
北京和上海
汉语和法语

今天天气是不是很冷?

北方冬天	冷
春天风	大
南方秋天	热
南方山水	好看
汉字	难写

南方常常下雨吗?
是的。

你	喝茶
他	去茶馆
你	看报

北京,你去过几次?
两次。

中国	一次
北海公园	三次
长城	四次
天安门广场	两次

CIVILISATION

- Two famous sayings recall the beauty of Chinese scenery:
 - >> “Above, there’s Heaven; below there’s Suzhou and Hangzhou.” These two cities near Shanghai are both famous, the former for its canals and gardens, the latter which Marco Polo described as the noblest and the finest city in the world, for its lake.
 - >> Around Guilin in the south of China there are numerous mountains that are said to be like “hair pins of blue jade”.
- The Great Wall, said to be the only human construction visible from the moon, extends for several thousand kilometres from east to west. Conceived by the emperor Qin Shihuangdi who unified China in 221 B. C. , it was a defensive wall and a communication route that allowed even long distance messages to be delivered.
- Among Beijing’s many unique characteristics are the six thousand alleys or *hutong* with names like “Liu’s Vermicelli Factory *Hutong*”, “Reverence of Parents and Friends *Hutong*”, or “Dew Damp Garden *Hutong*”, even a “Sunny Before the Others *Hutong*”.
- In the north of China the change between the seasons is very clear. The warm and humid summer air quickly turns to the mild and dry air of autumn and then to the sunny but icy winter. This very distinct variation was perhaps a major factor in the forming of the Yin and Yang philosophy.
 - >> Supplementary vocabulary:

夏天	xiàtiān	summer
故宫	Gùgōng	the Forbidden City
天坛	Tiāntán	the Temple of Heaven

“SNOWBALL” VERSION 5



我认为音乐家和语言学家有这样几点区别：

- 一、音乐家的父母多是商人，语言学家的父母多是知识分子。
- 二、音乐家没有知心朋友，语言学家朋友很多。
- 三、音乐家长得好看的多，语言学家长得好看的少。
- 四、音乐家休息的时候喜欢去公园，语言学家喜欢去市场和书店。
- 五、音乐家喜欢生物，语言学家爱文物。
- 六、音乐家不用笔名，语言学家笔名很多。
- 七、音乐家喜欢吃公鸡，语言学家爱吃母鸡。
- 八、音乐家都是天才，语言学家口才很好。
- 九、音乐家晚会上爱吃水果，语言学家爱吃点心。
- 十、音乐家开会时发言不长，语言学家常常爱用文言。
- 十一、音乐家爱在家里打电话，语言学家喜欢用公用电话。
- 十二、音乐家说话很和气，语言学家说话要看对象。
- 十三、音乐家小气的多，语言学家大方的多。
- 十四、音乐家不喜欢听鸡叫，语言学家觉得鸡叫是音乐。

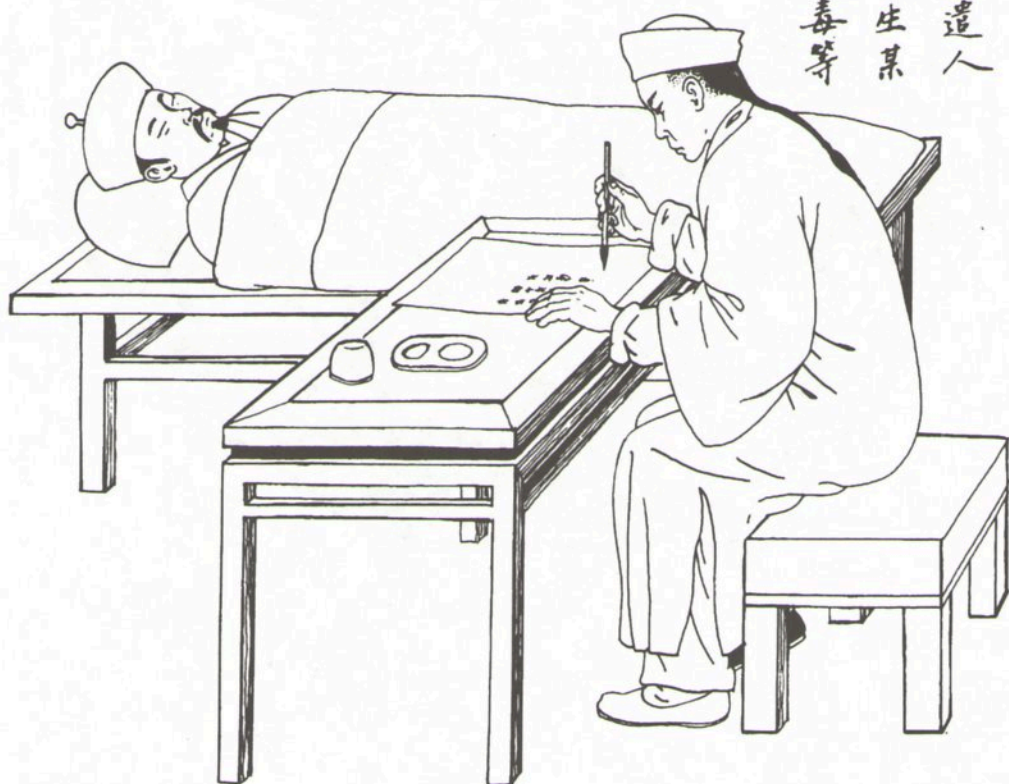
我的看法，你同意吗？

THE ANIMALS OF THE HOROSCOPE



Fine calligraphy made a doctor good. . .

此中國披殃榜之圖也其人病故停在床上遣人
即請陰陽先生來批殃榜上寫故者某年月生某
年月故何時入殮何日出殃若身死不明服毒等
晴陰陽不披即去報官



第16课 吃什么药?



关: 是包更声家吗?我找更声。

包: 我就是!你是小关吧?

关: 是,你怎么还不来?还有五分钟,电影就要开始了。

包: 对不起,我病了,头疼。

关: 去医院了吗?

包: 去了。大夫说得吃些药。

关: 吃什么药?

包: 两种药,安定片和龙脑,又有西药又有中药。大夫还让我不要出去,在家休息三天。

关: 龙脑是什么药?以前我怎么没听说过有这种药?

包: 这是新药。

关: 哦!好好地休息,下星期见!

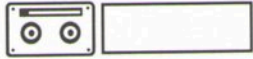


昨天我没去关放活家看电影。我病了,头疼。大夫让我不要出去,在家休息三天。我吃的药不少,又有西药又有中药。西药是安定片,中药是龙脑。龙脑是一种新药,我第一次吃。听说这种药很好。这些药我得吃三天。下星期一再去医院看看。



昨天我没去关放活家看电影。我病了,头疼。大夫让我不要出去,在家休息三天。我吃的药不少,又有西药,又有中药。西药是安定片,中药是龙脑。龙脑是一种新药,我第一次吃。听说这种药很好。这些药我得吃三天。下星期一再去医院看看。

NEW WORDS



TIME WORD

以前

yǐqián

before

MEASURE WORDS

分钟
种

fēnzhōng

minute

zhǒng

type, sort

NOUNS

药

yào

medicine, remedy

电影

diànyǐng

film

头

tóu

head

大夫

dàifu

doctor

安定

āndìng

sedative

片

piàn

tablet, capsule

龙脑

lóngnǎo

borneol (lit. dragon's brains)

西药

xīyào

western medicine

中药

zhōngyào

traditional Chinese medicine

VERBS

找	zhǎo	to look for, to want to speak to
开始	kāishǐ	to begin; beginning
病	bìng	to be ill
疼	téng	to have aches and pains
得	děi	must, to have to
让	ràng	to ask or tell (someone) to do something, to allow

QUALIFYING VERBS

新	xīn	new
---	-----	-----

EXPRESSIONS

对不起	duìbuqǐ	excuse me! I beg your pardon (I'm not worthy of facing you)
下星期见	xiàxīngqī jiàn	see you next week

GRAMMATICAL WORDS

地	de	[adverbial particle]
---	----	----------------------

INTERROGATIVE

怎么	zěnmē	how come...? why...?
----	-------	----------------------

CONSTRUCTION

就要...了	jiù yào...le	to be just about to...
--------	--------------	------------------------


SINOGRAMS




PRESENTATION

药	yào	medicine	药店, 药房, 药水, 药方, 火药
龙	lóng	dragon	龙年, 黑龙江, 车水马龙
找	zhǎo	to look for	找到
钟	zhōng	clock, bell	钟头, 钟楼
影	yǐng	shadow	影子, 电影院
始	shǐ	to begin; beginning	
起	qǐ	to get up, to start	起来, 起飞, 起子, 起名, 起重机, 起作用, 一起
病	bìng	to be sick; sickness	病人, 生病, 毛病, 看病
头	tóu	head	头儿, 头子, 老头儿, 火车
	tou	[suffix]	头, 点头, 里头, 外头
疼	téng	to have aches and pains	疼爱, 心疼
夫	fū	adult	夫人, 车夫
种	zhǒng	[Mw] type	
	zhòng	to plant	种田, 种地
定	dìng	stable; to reserve	定语, 一定, 不一定
片	piān	slice of. . . , roll of. . . , sheet of. . .	片子
	piàn	tablet, capsule	影片, 名片
脑	nǎo	brain	脑子, 头脑, 电脑, 电脑化
让	ràng	to ask, to let, to give way	让路
新	xīn	new	新年

SINOGRAMS


MEMORY TECHNIQUE




药 藥  艹 + 纟 + 勺 grass radical + silk radical + "spoon"



龙 龍   一 十 方 龙 龙
 a dragon: its mouth, body and tail

找  扌 + 戈 hand radical + "dagger-axe" (halberd)





钟 鐘 鐘  钅 + 中 metal radical + middle

影  日 + 京 + 彡 "sun" + "capital" + ornament radical
 (景 panorama)


始  女 + 厶 + 口 "woman" + private radical + mouth (see 胎 embryo)
  a woman giving birth to a child, head first


起   走 + 己 "to go" + "oneself"



走 起 起 起



病   疒 + 丙 sickness radical + a cyclic sign
  a person lying on a bed




疒 疒 疒 疒 病 病 病


头 頭  丶 + 大 two points + "big"
 a person, marked to show the height of the head




疼  疒 + 冬 sickness radical + "winter"


夫  一 + 大 "one" + "big"
 夫 a person wearing an old man's cap:
an *adult man*



种 種  禾 + 中 "cereal" + "middle"
 种 a type of cereal *planted* like an arrow

定   宀 + 正 roof radical + "straight"
 定 the feet *stopped* under a roof

片   片 a split plank of wood

脑 腦   月 + 囟 flesh radical + "fontanel"
 脑 flesh and the skull with the fontanel

让 讓  讠 + 上 word radical + "above"

新  亲 + 斤 "close" (relatives) + "the pound" (axe radical)
 新 cut up wood for heat

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The construction 就要…了 jiùyào... le which encloses the verb and its eventual adverb is used to indicate an imminent action. 快要…了 kuàiyào... le is an equivalent construction.

E. g. 电影就要开始了。

The film is going to start soon.

就要下雨了。

It is going to rain soon.

快要上课了!

The class is going to start soon.

2. The verb 让 ràng is used here to express the idea “to ask (somebody to do something)”.

E. g. 大夫让我不要出去。

The doctor has advised me not to go out.

妈妈让我去买东西。

Mum asked me to do the shopping.

我朋友让我去看他。

My friend asked me to go and see him.

3. The adverbial particle 地 de, placed after a qualifying verb, transforms it into an adverb of manner. The qualifying verb must be composed of at least two sinograms. If it is originally composed of one sinogram it must be doubled or preceded by 很 hěn. The adverbial phrase formed in this way is placed in front of the verb.

E. g. 好好地休息!

Get some rest! (Rest well!)

他很快地写。

He wrote quickly.

APPLICATIONS

你找谁?
我找包更声。

什么	我的书
谁	小王
什么	飞机票
谁	马老师

电影就要开始了吗?
是的。

他	来
你朋友	走
你们	吃饭

快要下雨了吗?
是的。

上课	到北京
下课	写完
吃饭	到家

你怎么了?
我病了。

他	头疼
你孩子	病了

你吃什么药?
安定片。

龙脑	西药
中药	安定

大夫让你做什么?
大夫让我在家休息三天。

你爱人	去买东西
你父亲	去看电影
老师	不要出去

好好地休息!

快快	走
慢慢	喝
好好	学

CIVILISATION

- The dragon is an important symbol in China. Ancient descriptions tell of an animal with the eyes of a rabbit, the legs of a cat, a horse's head, deer's antlers, a serpent's neck, a dog's claws, a fish's scales and a frog's belly. The dragon, which was said to cause the spring thunder with its snorting after its long underground winter sleep, was an early symbol of beneficial climatic changes. It later became a symbol of the emperor; the phoenix became a symbol of the empress.
- The belief in the existence of dragons was still very widespread at the beginning of this century. Note, for example, the rather strange insistence of a recently published Chinese book that states "dragons definitely do not exist... they are legendary animals... and even the dinosaurs weren't dragons...!"
- Traditional Chinese medicine obeyed two fundamental principles.
 - ≫ The human body must be seen as a whole. The expression "take care of the head when you have a headache and take care of the feet when your feet hurt" is far from positive; on the contrary it means that one doesn't have an overall view of things.
 - ≫ The human body obeys the same laws as the whole of the universe. Good health is a balance between the principles of Yin and Yang (note that this is the idea that acupuncture is based on: when an illness is caused by an excess of Yang one must stimulate the points of Yin) and a harmony of the five elements – water, wood, fire, earth and metal.
- Medicine and gastronomy are closely associated. Nearly everything in Chinese cooking is medicinal. Bitter cucumber provides resistance against the hot weather, the meat of wild cat is considered to be a good preventative against muscular pain, the sea cucumber is appreciated for its proteins and cow lungs are said to be effective in cough prevention.





第17课 你买了些什么东西?



关：小包，你在这儿站着等谁？

包：等老王。

关：我差点儿忘了，老王九点就到了，你怎么现在才来？

包：因为我坐错车了，所以到晚了。

关：老王让我把你带到他办公室去。把你的手提包给我。

包：不用了，手提包太重，我自己拿吧。你拿这个轻的。

关：你买了些什么东西？

包：不少东西，收音机、衣服，用的、吃的什么都有。

关：在哪儿买的？

包：一个日夜商店。

关：东西贵不贵？花了多少钱？

包：有的贵，有的不贵。一共花了八十多块。

关：你把钱都花了吧？

包：可不是！

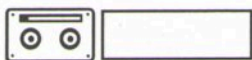


今天我去商店买了很多东西。吃的、用的什么都有。吃的东西有鸡、鱼、肉和酒。用的东西有收音机、手提包和衣服。吃的东西不太贵，用的东西很贵。我花了不少钱，有八十多块。我是坐汽车回来的。因为我坐错了车，所以十一点多才回来。老王没有等我。关放活把我带到了老王的办公室。



今天我去商店买了很多东西。吃的、用的什么都有。吃的东西有鸡、鱼、肉和酒。用的东西有收音机、手提包和衣服。……

NEW WORDS



PRONOUN

自己	zìjǐ	oneself
----	------	---------

NOUNS

东西	dōngxi	things
办公室	bàngōngshì	office
手提包	shǒutíbāo	handbag
收音机	shōuyīnjī	radio
衣服	yīfu	clothing
日夜	rìyè	night and day

ADVERBS

差点儿	chàdiǎnr	[adverbial expression] almost
才	cái	just, only
一共	yíòng	all together

PREPOSITION

把	bǎ	[preposition preceding a direct object]
---	----	---

VERBS

站	zhàn	to be standing up
等	děng	to wait
忘	wàng	to forget
带	dài	to bring
拿	ná	to take
花	huā	to spend

QUALIFYING VERBS

晚	wǎn	to be late
重	zhòng	to be heavy
轻	qīng	to be light

GRAMMATICAL WORD

着	zhe	[verbal suffix of duration]
---	-----	-----------------------------

CONSTRUCTIONS

因为…	yīnwèi	because
所以…	suǒyǐ	therefore, that's why

EXPRESSIONS

不用	búyòng	it's no use. . . , don't bother
可不是	kěbúshì	of course, and how!

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

着	zhe	[verbal suffix of duration]	跟着
	zháo	to achieve... [resultative], to become (cold)	找着, 着凉
等	děng	etc.; to wait; rank, grade	等等, 上等, 中等, 下等
差	chà	to fall short of, not correct	差不多, 差得多
	chā	difference, discrepancy	差别, 时差
忘	wàng	to forget	忘了, 难忘
因	yīn	cause, because	外因
所	suǒ	that which, place, institute; Mw	所有, 所有的, 语言所, 化学所
把	bǎ	[antepositional preposition]; to grab	把关
带	dài	to wear, to carry, to bring; zone	热带, 一带
办	bàn	to handle (business etc.)	办法, 办事, 办不到, 怎么办, 难办
室	shì	room	教室, 休息室, 画室, 更衣室
手	shǒu	hand	手工, 水手, 分手, 白手起家
提	tí	to lift, to suggest, to allude to	提出, 提高, 提前, 提问, 提名 提亲
己	jǐ	oneself	知己
拿	ná	to hold, to take	拿给, 拿手
轻	qīng	light (not heavy)	年轻, 年轻人, 轻声
收	shōu	to receive	收到, 收听, 收回, 收买, 秋收
衣	yī	clothing	大衣, 雨衣, 风衣, 上衣, 毛衣
服	fú	clothing; to submit, to absorb	服从, 西服, 口服, 说服
夜	yè	night	夜里, 夜市, 夜班, 半夜, 黑夜, 开夜车
共	gòng	common	共和国, 共同, 共事, 共同市场, 公共汽车

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

着



丶 丿 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 着



羊 + 目

“sheep” + “eye”

等



艹 + 土 + 寸

bamboo radical + earth + “thumb” (寺: “temple”)

差



羊 + 工

“sheep” + “work”

忘



亡 + 心

“die, disappear” + “heart”



亡

disappear from the heart, to *forget*

因



口 + 大

wall radical + “big”



人

a person lying on a straw mattress (see 茵 “mat”)

所



丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 所 所



户 + 斤

single door radical + “pound” (axe radical)



所

to break open a door

把



扌 + 巴

hand radical + “boa”

带

带



艹 + 巾

graphic element + “cloth”



带

a cloth *belt* knotted around the waist

办

办



力 + 丶 丶

“force” + two points

室



宀 + 至

roof radical + “to arrive”



室

an arrow stuck in the ground under a roof

手



一 = 三 手

a hand

提



扌 + 是

hand radical + "to be"

己



丿 冫 己

a string (originally attached to an arrow to lure birds)

拿



合 + 手

"to close" + "hand"



a hand making a fist (closing itself like a lid on a container)

轻

輕



车 + 经

"chariot" + "threads on a loom"



经 纟 工

silk and threads on a loom

收



収 + 攴

phonetic element + hand holding a stick radical

衣



丶 亠 衤 衣 衣

a cross-over Chinese dress

服



月 + 服

flesh radical + submission radical



a hand subduing a person

夜



宀 + 亻 + cf. 夕

graphic element + person radical + "moon" (variant.)



at *nightfall*, the rising moon appears under a person's arm

共



two hands holding the same object

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. 1.1 The verbal suffix 着 zhe indicates the aspect of duration. Placed after the main verb it indicates that the action is continuous. It is usually combined with 呢 ne at the end of the sentence.

E. g. 他坐着呢。 He's sitting down.
他站着呢。 He's standing.
他吃着饭呢。 He is eating (in the process of eating).

- 1.2 When placed after the first verb in a combination of two, the suffix 着 zhe indicates simultaneity ("while" + present participle).

E. g. 你站着等谁? Who are you standing (here) waiting for?
他走着看书。 He reads while walking.
他喝着茶看报。 He is reading the newspaper while drinking tea.

2. The adverbs 就 jiù and 才 cái: They are placed just before the verb and mark the occurrence of a new action. 就 jiù indicates that the action occurs as expected or early; 才 cái however indicates that the action occurs later than expected.

E. g. 他九点就到了。 He came at nine o'clock.
他星期一就走了。 He left on Monday.
你现在才来! You've only just got here!
他今天才走。 He's only leaving today (i. e. not before).

3. 3.1 The preposition 把 bǎ precedes the D. O. (before the verb). Sentences formed in this way makes the D. O. act as though it were the subject; the D. O. is considered as part of the "setting" of the action. The essential information is always found at the end of a Chinese sentence.

E. g. 你把手提包给我。 Give me the handbag (the handbag, give it to me!)
他把药吃了。 He took his medicine (the important information is that he took it).

- 3.2 Note that the action verb doesn't like to be alone. It can be accompanied by a resultative, adverbial suffix or another element (noun, pronoun).

E. g. 他把那本书看完了。 He has finished reading that book.

- 3.3 Finally, note that negation and optative verbs are placed before 把 bǎ.

E. g. 他没把饺子吃完。 He hasn't finished eating his ravioli.
他要把饺子都吃了。 He wants to eat all the ravioli.

APPLICATIONS

你在这儿站着等谁?
等老王。

坐	小王
站	李大夫

把你的手提包给我!

那本书	他
那张地图	我哥哥
你的衣服	我爱人
这个收音机	我朋友

你把钱都花了吧?
没有。

饺子	吃
这些书	看
那些鱼	买
药	吃

手提包重不重?
很重。

收音机	轻不轻
这些东西	重不重
飞机	贵不贵
汽车	新不新

你买了些什么东西?
一些衣服。

一个收音机
一些用的东西
一点儿吃的东西
两张北京地图和几本书
一点儿茶和一些药

你花了多少钱?
八十多块。

他	四十块
你爱人	十六块五
老王	二百五十块

CIVILISATION

- Market research in China has shown that black thermos flasks sell better than other colours. Black is in fact a positive colour, associated with a connotation of good morals and the idea of solemnity. On the other hand, in the South which is more open to Western ideas, black is considered a bad omen.
- The symbolism of colours occupies a predominant place in Beijing opera, in particular in the make-up of the characters known as “painted faces”. Red symbolises openness and courage, blue symbolises cruelty and white symbolises treachery and treason. The role known as the “black dress” is that of a simple and serious woman.
- Red has always been the main colour of celebration. From the earliest times, a piece of red bark was placed above doors to scare away devils. Even today, good luck charms written in calligraphy on red paper are stuck on both sides of the front door during the Spring Festival.
- Devils 鬼 guǐ are said to be ghosts (“devil” and “to come back” have similar pronunciations) and are said to be recognised by the following features.
 - >> They have no shadow in the daytime.
 - >> They stay around graves.
 - >> They can change shape.
 - >> They move in straight lines and do not bother to avoid obstacles.
 - >> They are afraid of fire, swords, red wood and noise (of fire crackers, gongs and drums).
 - >> They can be scared off simply by drawing ramparts, a ditch, a dagger-axe or a shield, i. e. , the corresponding Chinese characters.



第18课 祝你一路平安

关：飞机下午四点一刻起飞，你怎么去机场？

包：我骑自行车去。

关：你真成了中国人了！

包：‘到什么山上唱什么歌儿’！

关：回国后，你做什么工作？

包：可能要当校长。

关：你真是‘飞机上生孩子—高升(生)了’！

包：哪里，哪里。

关：机场太远，还是叫辆出租汽车吧！

包：方便的话，那就叫辆出租吧！哪儿有公用电话？

关：在动物园旁边。别忘了，到了旧金山，就给我来信。

包：一言为定。虽然这次我回国时间很长，可是我会常常给你写信的。

关：好，祝你一路平安！

今天下午四点一刻我坐飞机去旧金山。我朋友说，机场太远，还是坐出租汽车去方便。我打电话叫了辆出租。我们是坐出租到机场的。在机场，我朋友让我到了旧金山就给他来信。我说我不会忘的，一言为定。虽然这次我回国工作时间很长，可是我会常常给他写信的。上飞机的时候，他对我说：“祝你一路平安！”

今天下午四点一刻我坐飞机去旧金山。我朋友说，机场太远，还是坐出租汽车去方便。我打电话叫了辆出租。……

NEW WORDS



MEASURE WORDS

刻	kè	[Mw for quarter of an hour]
辆	liàng	[Mw for vehicles, bicycles]

NOUNS

机场	jīchǎng	airport
歌儿	gē	song
校长	xiàozhǎng	school principal
出租汽车	chūzūqìchē	taxi
公用	gōngyòng	public (use)
动物	dòngwù	animal
动物园	dòngwùyuán	zoo
旧金山	Jiùjīnshān	San Francisco
信	xìn	letter

LOCATIVE WORDS

旁边	pángbiān	next to
----	----------	---------

ADVERBS

真	zhēn	really
别	bié	don't

VERBS

祝	zhù	to wish
起飞	qǐfēi	to take off
骑	qí	to ride; by (bicycle, motorbike, horse)
成	chéng	to become
唱	chàng	to sing
当	dāng	to be, to assume the role of
生	shēng	to give birth to
高升	gāoshēng	to rise, to be promoted
来信	láixìn	to send a letter

QUALIFYING VERBS

方便	fāngbiàn	to be comfortable, to be practical
----	----------	------------------------------------

EXPRESSIONS

哪里	nǎli	It's nothing!
一言为定	yìyánwéidìng	Understood! That's settled then!
一路平安	yílùpíng'ān	Have a safe trip!

CONSTRUCTIONS

虽然/可是	suīrán/kěshì	even though... however
……的话	...dehuà	if...

SINOGRAMS

PRESENTATION

祝	zhù	to wish	祝酒
平	píng	calm, flat	平常, 平时, 平方米, 平行, 平等 公平, 和平, 水平, 太平天国
刻	kè	a quarter of an hour; to engrave, to carve	刻字, 一刻钟, 立刻, 时刻
骑	qí	to ride	骑马
真	zhēn	real; really	真的, 认真
成	chéng	to become	成家, 成就, 成分, 成年人, 成果 成立, 成本, 成语, 完成, 做成
唱	chàng	to sing	唱片, 唱机
歌	gē	song	歌手, 歌唱, 国歌, 民歌, 儿歌
当	dāng dàng	to assume the role of, when considered as; pawn	·当场, 当时, 当地, 当前, 当中 当做, 上当
校	xiào	school	校友, 校园, 贵校, 母校
升	shēng	to move upward	
辆	liàng	[Mw for vehicles, bicycles etc.]	
租	zū	to rent	房租
便	biàn	convenient; to relieve oneself; therefore	便饭, 请便, 大便, 小便
动	dòng	to move	动画片, 动机, 动人, 动作, 活动, 生动, 自动, 主动
旁	páng	next to	旁人, 旁听, 两旁, 身旁
旧	jiù	old, used	
金	jīn	gold, metal	金鱼, 金文, 金子
信	xìn	letter; to believe in	信心, 信用, 信息学, 明信片
虽	suī	although, though	
然	rán	like that, in that way, but	然后, 当然, 自然, 大自然, 不然

SINOGRAMS

MEMORY TECHNIQUE

祝



礻 + 兄



祝

礻 礻 礻 祝 祝 祝

rites radical + “older brother”

a person genuflecting, mouth open *invoking* the spirits before a ritual altar

平



干 + 八



平

一 一 一 一 平

“to do” + “eight” (element of separation)

equal share of breath

刻



亥 + 刂

variant of pig (phonetic element: see 孩) + knife radical

骑

騎



马 + 奇



骑

“horse” + “strange”

a rider on a horse with the horse radical added

真



十 + 具



真

“ten” + “tool”

a bronze container

成



成

a pole (or a weapon) with which something can be *accomplished*

唱



口 + 昌

“mouth” + “flourishing”

歌



哥 + 欠


“elder brother” + person with mouth open radical



当


當




一 一 一 当 当 当




校  木 + 交 “tree” + “to join” (phonetic element: see 饺)

升   litre (one tenth of 斗 dǒu; 斗: = “decalitre”)


辆  车 + 两 “chariot” + “two”



租  禾 + 且 “cereal” + phonetic element




便  亻 + 更 person radical + “more; change”




动  云 + 力 “cloud” + “force”
  “heavy” and “strength”: to *move* a heavy object




旁  产 + 方 graphic element + “direction”

旧  丨 + 日 a stroke + “sun”

金   two pieces of minerals buried under the ground

信  亻 + 言 person radical + “word”
  a person’s word, their credibility (*believe*);
the word carried by a person (*message*)

虽  口 + 虫 “mouth” + “insect”
  a rice weevil

然  月 + 犬 + 灺 meat radical + “dog” + fire radical
  to light a fire (to roast dog meat)

GRAMMAR

EXPLANATIONS

1. The construction Vb + 了 le... 就 jiù: This construction indicates that a new action follows a previously completed one.

E. g. 你到了旧金山, 就给我来信。 Write to me when you get to San Francisco.

我吃了饭, 就去医院。

I'll go to the hospital when I've finished my meal.

他买了飞机票, 就去机场了。

After buying the plane ticket he went to the airport.

APPLICATIONS

飞机几点起飞?
下午四点一刻。

早上六点
差一刻十二点
差十分八点

你怎么去机场?
我骑自行车去。

火车站	坐汽车
医院	坐出租
动物园	走着
旧金山	坐飞机

飞机场远不远?
不太远。

火车站
医院

很远
不远

哪儿有公用电话?
在动物园旁边。

茶馆
医院
饭馆
商店

车站东边
我家南边
公园北边
机场对面

到了旧金山就给我来信。
一言为定。

法国
北京
美国

上海
中国
家

祝你一路平安!

身体好
工作好

新年好
学习好

CIVILISATION

● **成语** *chéngyǔ* are fixed, fossilised expressions, clichés in four characters that are a sign of style. Some *chengyu* are the contraction of ancient stories into four characters.

>> 邯郸学步 *Hándān xué bù*: “Learn to walk like the people of Handan”. A young man went to Handan. He admired the walk of the people so much that he tried to acquire it. Not only were his efforts in vain but he forgot his old way of walking and he had to crawl home on all fours. This *chengyu* means whenever we try too hard to imitate others we lose our own originality and that we must not go against the nature of things.

>> 井底之蛙 *jǐng dǐ zhī wā*: “To be like a frog at the bottom of a well”. This expression means “to wear blinkers”, to only see one side of things like the frog who mistook the bit of sky it could see from the bottom of its well to be the whole sky.

>> 车水马龙 *chē shuǐ mǎ lóng*: “Chariots are like water (that runs) and horses are like dragons”. This *chengyu* describes an important traffic route.

● **歇后语** *xiēhòuyǔ* are expressions whose humour arises from a pun based on the first part of the expression. The punch-line is often a play on words.

>> 飞机上生孩子——高升(生)了! *fēijī shàng shēng háizi—gāo shēng (shēng) le!*: “To give birth to a child on a plane... to take a step up (give birth in the air).” This expression is used to speak about somebody’s promotion, the words “up” and “to give birth” having an identical pronunciation.

>> 蛤蟆跳井——不懂(扑通)! *háma tiào jǐng—bùdǒng (pūtōng)*: “A frog jumping in a well... I don’t understand (splash!).” This is a humorous way of indicating that one doesn’t understand something; the expression “splash!” alludes to “don’t understand” which both have a similar pronunciation.

“SNOWBALL” VERSION 6



给男朋友的信

亲爱的文平：

你好！好久没有收到你的信了。你最近怎么样？身体好吗？我现在天天在想你。你想我吗？你快把我忘了吧？为什么不给我来信呢？难道是生病了吗？

三年以前，我认识你的时候，你很年轻，刚刚出国回来。我在校园门口问了你一些信息学方面的问题，因为我听过你的课。虽然你讲课的时候有点儿黑龙江口音，可是我觉得你讲得很有水平，很认真。那天，你开始跟我说话的时候还有点儿不好意思呢。当然，过了一会儿就自然多了。后来，是你主动找了我几次。一次是给我讲电脑。当时，我觉得你的脑子就跟电脑一样。一次是给我讲成语。你讲的两个成语是‘一心一意’和‘三心二意’。你说做事要一心一意，不能三心二意。不知怎的，现在我一听到这两个成语，就想起你。一次是讲李白，你说你最喜欢李白。还有一次是你给我唱民歌。你唱的民歌真动人，真好听。看来，你还是一个歌唱家呢。从那以后，我就爱上了你。真的，当时我时刻想跟你在一起，坐在你身旁，听你讲知心话。最让我难忘的是前年秋天。有一天，我们一起去看一个外国动画片。回来的时候，下雨了。我忘了带雨衣，着凉了。你跟我一起去医院看病，去药房买药。我没有带钱包，是你拿钱买的药。我生病的那几天，你天天骑自行车来看我。有时在我这儿吃点儿便饭，很晚才回家。当时，我真有点儿心疼你。

去年新年的时候，我收到了你的明信片 and 一张唱片。明信片上写着：“给我的意中人”。看到这几个字，我高兴得不知怎么好。

亲爱的，我们在机场分手的时候，你说：“我是讲信用的，你一定等着我。我得了学位，就马上回来。”我没忘你的话。我在等你，时刻在等着你，等着你早一天回来。

祝你万事如意！

你的心上人 园园

1996年9月3日 于北大

SUPPLEMENTARY TEXT 3



Old Meat

老牛肉

一个男孩儿来到牛肉店,对店主说:“妈妈让我告诉你,你卖的牛肉太差了,又老又硬,拿去作皮鞋底还差不多。”

店主说:“那你们怎么不用它作鞋底,拿到这儿来做什么?”

小男孩儿说:“妈妈说本来打算作鞋底,可是钉了半天,连钉子都钉不进去。”

NEW WORDS

告诉	gàosu	to tell, warn
卖	mài	to sell
硬	yìng	to be hard
皮鞋	píxié	leather shoes
鞋底	xiédǐ	sole (of shoes)
打算	dǎsuan	to plan to...
钉	dīng	to nail
钉子	dīngzi	nail
连...都...	lián...dōu...	even

SINOGRAMS

告	gào	to inform
诉	sù	to relate, to accuse
皮	pí	skin, leather
鞋	xié	shoe
底	dǐ	base, bottom
算	suan	to calculate
连	lián	to join; even

NANNIWAN – FOLK SONG



南泥湾

花篮的花儿香啊，
听我来唱一唱啊，唱一呀唱！
来到了南泥湾，南泥湾好地方，好地呀方！
好地方呀，好风光。
好地方呀，好风光。
到处是庄稼，遍地是牛羊啊！

NEW WORDS

南泥湾	Nánníwān	Nanniwan [place name]
花篮	huālán	flower basket
香	xiāng	fragrant
啊	a	[exclamatory particle]
呀	ya	[exclamatory particle]
风光	fēngguāng	scenery
到处	dàochù	everywhere
庄稼	zhuāngjia	harvest
遍地	biàndì	all over, everywhere

SINOGRAMS

泥	ní	mud
湾	wān	curve, bend, bay
篮	lán	basket
光	guāng	flash of light
处	chù	place
稼	jià	to sow; crops
遍	biàn	everywhere

南 泥 湾

花篮的花儿香啊，听我来唱一唱啊，

唱一呀唱！来到了南泥湾，

南泥湾好地方，好地方呀！

好地方呀，好风光。好地方呀，

好风光。到处是庄稼，

遍地是牛羊啊！

第 0 課 中國大，日本小。

中國大，日本小。

王：中國大嗎？

馬：中國很大。

王：日本大嗎？

馬：日本不大，很小。

第 0,5 課 你是哪國人？

李：你是哪國人？

田：我是法國人。

李：他們也是法國人嗎？

田：不是，他們是美國人。

李：小王是日本人嗎？

田：不是。小王是中國人，小馬是日本人。

我是法國人，他們是美國人。小王、小馬不是美國人。小王是中國人，小馬是日本人。

第 1 課 您貴姓？



田立陽：您貴姓？

王月文：我姓王。

田立陽：你叫什麼名字？

王月文：我叫王月文。

田立陽：他姓什麼？

王月文：他姓馬。

田立陽：他是不是中國人？

王月文：不是，他是法國人。

田立陽：他去哪兒？

王月文：他去中國。

我姓王，叫王月文。我不是法國人，是中國人。我去北京（Běijīng）。

第 2 課 你學什麼?



- 田：小王，這是誰的書？
王：這是我的書。
田：那是老師的書嗎？
王：不是老師的，是馬冬的。
田：哦！馬冬學中文嗎？
王：是的，他學中文。
田：他是誰的學生？
王：王老師的學生。
田：你學什麼？
王：我學法文。

馬冬是王老師的學生。他學中文。這是他的書。我不學中文，我學法文。

第 2,5 課 你漢語說得怎麼樣？



- 田：你學外語嗎？
王：我學外語。你說漢語嗎？
田：我說漢語。他呢？
王：他也說漢語，我們都說漢語。
田：他漢語說得怎麼樣？
王：說得很好。
田：你呢？
王：我說得不好。
田：你漢字寫得好不好？
王：寫得很好。

我們都學外語。我學漢語，他學法語。我漢語說得很好，漢字寫得不好。他法語說得很好，法文寫得也很好。

第3課 你去過中國嗎？



田：你說，中國大不大？

王：很大。

田：法國呢？

王：法國不大也不小。你看，這是中國地圖。

田：日本在哪兒？

王：中國在這兒，日本在那兒。

田：你去過中國嗎？

王：沒去過。

田：你想去嗎？

王：我很想去中國。

田：我想去北京、南京、山東、山西。

中國很大，法國不大也不小。我沒去過中國。我很想去中國。我想去北京、南京、山東、山西。這是中國地圖。北京在這兒，南京在那兒。

第4課 你家有幾口人？



田：你去哪兒？

王：我回家。

田：你家在北方嗎？

王：不在北方，在南方，上海。

田：你家有幾口人？

王：四口人。

田：有沒有孩子？

王：有。兩個，一個男孩兒，一個女孩兒。

田：你愛人在哪兒工作？

王：她在中學工作。

田：她作什麼工作？

王：她是老師。

我中國人。我家在上海，有四口人。我有一個男孩兒，一個女孩兒。我是老師，我愛人也是老師。她在中學工作。

第 5 課 你想喝一點兒什麼？



田：小王，你想喝一點兒什麼？

王：喝茶。你呢？

田：我想喝一杯可口可樂。

王：這不是喝可口可樂的地方，是茶館。

田：哦，是喝茶的地方。好，要一杯茶。

王：喝花茶還是紅茶？

田：紅茶是什麼茶？

王：法國人叫‘黑茶’。

田：你們法國人喜歡喝什麼？

王：喜歡喝酒。你喝過法國酒嗎？

田：沒有。法國人喝開水嗎？

王：不喝，喝涼水。

我是北方人，喜歡喝花茶。我孩子喜歡喝可口可樂。我的學生都是法國人。他們喜歡喝酒。法國人也喜歡喝紅茶。他們不喝開水，喝涼水。

第6課 你什麼時候去中國?



田：你什麼時候去中國？

王：我今年七月去。

田：你怎麼去？坐飛機還是坐火車？

王：我坐飛機去，坐火車回來。

田：坐火車要幾天？

王：要八天。坐飛機要十六個小時。

田：你買飛機票了嗎？

王：還沒有。

田：買票的人多不多？

我想今年九月去中國。老師說，去中國，坐火車要八天，坐飛機要十六個小時。我不喜歡坐火車，我喜歡坐飛機。我要坐飛機去中國。我還沒有買飛機票。我想三月去買飛機票。

第7課 你好!



張教元：小王，你好！好久不見了，最近怎麼樣？

王萬民：還可以。

張教元：那本畫報你看完了嗎？

王萬民：還沒有。

張教元：那個人是誰？

王萬民：他是我的朋友，王里重。

張教元：你們是什麼時候認識的？

王萬民：去年二月。

張教元：他今年多大了？

王萬民：二十九歲了？

張教元：好，我走了，有時間到我家去。再見！

王萬民：再見！

我有一個中國朋友，叫王里重。我們是一九八五年在北京認識的。在北京，我去過他的家。他愛人是大學老師。他有一個六歲的女孩兒。我好久沒見他了，我很想他。

第 8 課 你學了多長時間了？



張：你學過漢語嗎？

王：學過。你呢？

張：我現在正在學漢語。

王：你學了多長時間了？

張：我們班的同學都學了一年了，我只學了半年。

王：現在你的中文怎麼樣？

張：會說一點兒，不能看書。

王：上課的時候，老師說的話你聽得懂嗎？

張：馬馬虎虎。昨天老師念課文，我沒聽懂。

王：今天你幾點上課？

張：八點上課，九點半下課。

我現在正在學漢語。今天我們八點上課，九點半下課。我們班的同學漢語都學了一年了，我只學了半年。現在我會說一點兒，不能看書。中國人說話，有的我聽得懂，有的我聽不懂。上課的時候，老師說的話我都能聽懂。

第9課 中國人口有多少？



張：我問你一個問題，中國人口有多少？

王：不知道，很多吧！

張：再問你一個問題，長江、黃河有多長？

王：不知道，可能很長吧！

張：那你知道什麼？

王：我知道四川人口不少，中國自行車很多，中國人用筷子吃飯。

張：你知道孔子的老家在哪兒嗎？

王：在山東。

張：你還知道什麼？

王：山東在山西東邊，湖南在湖北南邊。

中國是一個大國，人口很多。長江、黃河很長。四川很大，在中國西南。我還知道中國自行車很多，中國人用筷子吃飯。我去過孔子的老家。他的老家在山東。山東在山西東邊。

第 10 課 你愛人在家嗎？



張：誰？

王：我小王。

張：哦，小王。請進！請進！

王：幹什麼事呢？

張：看報呢？

王：你愛人在家嗎？

張：不在，剛出去，上班去了。我今天休息。

王：這是誰的孩子，她太可愛了！

張：是我哥哥的。

王：你哥哥住哪兒？

張：他家的房子離電報大樓不遠。明天我跟我愛人去看他。

王：我給我朋友打個電話，可以嗎？

張：可以。

我有一個哥哥。他家離電報大樓不遠。他愛人是老師，在中學工作。他們有一個女孩兒。她現在上小學。她很可愛。我很喜歡她。今天我哥哥給我打電話說，他明天休息。我想明天跟我男朋友去看他們。

第 11 課 吃什麼菜？



張：你們幾位？

王：兩個人。

張：請坐！吃什麼菜？有魚，有雞，有牛肉，有羊肉。

王：來一份兒白菜，一份兒古老肉。

張：吃米飯還是吃餃子？

王：聽說你們飯館的餃子做得不錯。我餓了，先來四兩餃子吧！

張：你們會用筷子嗎？

王：不太會。我用筷子吃得不快。

張：慢慢吃！

王：謝謝！

昨天我跟我朋友吃的是中國飯。我們吃的菜有魚，有雞，有牛肉，有羊肉。我還要了一份兒白菜。我朋友還要了一份兒古老肉。昨天我們都很餓。我們吃了四兩米飯、六兩餃子。我朋友會用筷子，吃得很快。我不會用筷子，吃得很慢。我們吃飯吃了兩個小時。

第 12 課 有買票的嗎？



- 張：有買票的嗎？
王：買兩張到天安門的票。多少錢一張？
張：五毛。
王：給您一塊。從這兒到天安門有幾站？
張：三站。
王：請問，到北京醫院怎麼坐車？
張：下了車再坐二十二路汽車。
王：二十二路車站在哪兒？
張：下車后，往前走，就是二十二路車站。
王：到北京醫院在哪兒下車？
張：前門。

我知道到天安門怎麼坐車。你從這兒坐三三二路汽車坐十站，在西四下。下了車再坐二十二路，在天安門下。下車后，往前走就是天安門。從這兒到西四的票是五毛，從西四到天安門也是五毛。

第 13 課 看什麼呢？



關放活：看什麼呢？

包更聲：《丁丁》。剛才我父親在對面那個商店買的。

關放活：誰寫的？

包更聲：我不知道。你看過這本書嗎？

關放活：看過。你喜歡杜本和杜朋先生嗎？

包更聲：他們不是主要人物，可是我最喜歡他們。

關放活：好像杜本比杜朋大一兩歲。

包更聲：不，他們兩個人一樣大，可是杜本比杜朋高一點兒。

關放活：這本書，你明天能看完嗎？我母親想看看。

包更聲：可能看得完。如果我今天晚上看完了，明天早上就給你。

關放活：這樣，我母親會很高興。

我很喜歡《丁丁》這本書，也很喜歡丁丁這個人。我和我的父母都看過這本書。我們看的《丁丁》是法文的，不是中文的。中文的我現在還看不懂。我父親和母親最喜歡杜本和杜朋先生。這兩個人物一樣大，杜本比杜朋高一點兒。他們是丁丁的好朋友。

第 14 課 這個字什麼意思？



關：包更聲，這個字是用鋼筆寫的吗？

包：不是，是用毛筆寫的。

關：這個字怎麼發音？什麼意思？

包：‘錯’是‘不錯’的‘錯’，是‘不對’的意思。

關：你覺得漢字難寫嗎？

包：很難寫。我寫的字又大又難看。

關：你們有書法課嗎？

包：有，每星期三下午上書法課。你看，這是一些講書法的書。

關：有人說每天寫毛筆字對身體很好，是嗎？

包：是。關放活，你為什麼不學書法呢？

關：我很想學，不過我太忙，沒有時間。

我們每星期三上書法課。我很喜歡中國書法。我買了一些講書法的書。這是我寫的書法。這個字是中國的‘中’，那個字是北京的‘京’。這些都是用毛筆寫的。我覺得中國書法很好看，不過很難學。

第 15 課 北京,你去過幾次?



- 關：中國北方和南方是不是區別很大？
- 包：是區別很大。天氣、語言、飯菜都不一樣。
- 關：聽說南方常常下雨，南方人說話有時候聽不懂。北方冬天太冷，春天風很大。
- 包：對了。不過北京的秋天最好，不冷也不熱。我很喜歡北京的秋天。
- 關：北京是一個古老的城市嗎？
- 包：是的，也是中國的文化中心。
- 關：北京，你去過幾次？
- 包：兩次。北京有天安門廣場、北海公園、長城。
- 關：我知道。有人說還是南方山水好看。
- 包：可是‘不到長城非好漢’！

我去過很多次中國。我知道中國北方和南方區別很大。天氣、語言、飯菜都不一樣。北方冬天很冷，春天風很大。南方常常下雨。中國北方人說話好懂。南方人說話，有時候聽不懂。中國南方山水很好看。北京，我去過三次。我很喜歡這個城市。北京是一個古老的城市，也是中國的文化中心。北京的秋天最好，不冷也不熱。北京有天安門廣場、北海公園和長城。

第 16 課 吃什麼藥？



關：是包更聲家嗎？我找更聲。

包：我就是！你是小關吧？

關：是，你怎麼還不來？還有五分鐘，電影就要開始了。

包：對不起，我病了，頭疼。

關：去醫院了嗎？

包：去了。大夫說得吃些藥。

關：吃什麼藥？

包：兩種藥，安定片和龍腦，又有西藥又有中藥。大夫還讓我不要出去，在家休息三天。

關：龍腦是什麼藥？以前我怎麼沒聽說過有這種藥？

包：這是新藥。

關：哦！好好地休息，下星期見！

昨天我沒去關放活家看電影。我病了，頭疼。大夫讓我不
要出去，在家休息三天。我吃的藥不少，又有西藥又有中藥。西
藥是安定片，中藥是龍腦。龍腦是一種新藥，我第一次吃。聽說
這種藥很好。這些藥我得吃三天。下星期一再去醫院看看。

第 17 課 你買了些什麼東西？



關：小包，你在這兒站着等誰？

包：等老王。

關：我差點兒忘了，老王九點就到了，你怎么現在才來？

包：因為我坐錯車了，所以到晚了。

關：老王讓我把你帶到他辦公室去。把你的手提包給我。

包：不用了，手提包太重，我自己拿吧。你拿這個輕的。

關：你買了些什麼東西？

包：不少東西，收音機、衣服，用的、吃的什麼都有。

關：在哪兒買的？

包：一個日夜商店。

關：東西貴不貴？花了多少錢？

包：有的貴，有的不貴。一共花了八十多塊。

關：你把錢都花了吧？

包：可不是！

今天我去商店買了很多東西。吃的、用的什麼都有。吃的東西有雞、魚、肉和酒。用的東西有收音機、手提包和衣服。吃的東西不太貴，用的東西很貴。我花了不少錢，有八十多塊。我是坐汽車回來的。因為我坐錯了車，所以十一點多才回來。老王沒有等我。關放活把我帶到了老王的辦公室。

第 18 課 祝你一路平安



關：飛機下午四點一刻起飛，你怎麼去機場？

包：我騎自行車去。

關：你真成了中國人了！

包：‘到什麼山上唱什麼歌兒’！

關：回國後，你做什麼工作？

包：可能要當校長。

關：你真是‘飛機上生孩子——高升(生)了’！

包：哪里，哪里。

關：機場太遠，還是叫輛出租汽車吧！

包：方便的話，那就叫輛出租吧！哪兒有公用電話？

關：在動物園旁邊。別忘了，到了舊金山，就給我來信。

包：一言為定。雖然這次我回國時間很長，可是我會常常給你寫信的。

關：好，祝你一路平安！

今天下午四點一刻我坐飛機去舊金山。我朋友說，機場太遠，還是坐出租汽車去方便。我打電話叫了輛出租。我們是坐出租到機場的。在機場，我朋友讓我到了舊金山就給他來信。我說我不會忘的，一言為定。雖然這次我回國工作時間很長，可是我會常常給他寫信的。上飛機的時候，他對我說：“祝你一路平安！”

TRANSLATIONS

(The approach chosen is that of a translation as close to the original text as possible.)

0. 00 China Is Big, Japan Is Small

China is big, Japan is small.

Wang: Is China big?

Ma: China is big.

Wang: Is Japan big?

Ma: Japan isn't big, it's small.

0. 05 What Country Do You Come From?

Li: What country do you come from?

Tian: I'm French.

Li: Are they French too?

Tian: No, they're American.

Li: Is Little Wang Japanese?

Tian: Little Wang is Chinese, Little Ma is Japanese.

I am French, they are American. Little Wang and little Ma aren't American. Little Wang is Chinese, Little Ma is Japanese.

1. 1 What Is Your Surname?

Tian Yiyang: What is your surname?

Wang Yuewen: My surname is Wang.

Tian: What is your name?

Wang: My name is Wang Yuewen.

Tian: What is his surname?

Wang: His surname is Ma.

Tian: Is he Chinese?

Wang: No, he's French.

Tian: Where is he going?

Wang: He is going to China.

My surname is Wang, I'm called Wang Yuewen. I'm not French, I'm Chinese. I'm going to Beijing.

1. 2 What Do You Study?

Tian: Little Wang, whose book is this?

Wang: It's my book.

Tian: Is that the teacher's book?

Wang: It's not the teacher's, it's Ma Dong's.

Tian: Oh! Does Ma Dong study Chinese?

Wang: Yes, he studies Chinese.

Tian: Whose student is he?

Wang: He's teacher Wang's student.

Tian: What do you study?

Wang: French.

Ma Dong is teacher Wang's student. He studies Chinese. This is his book. I don't study Chinese, I study French.

1. 25 How Well Do You Speak Chinese?

Tian: Do you study foreign languages?

Wang: I study foreign languages. Do you speak Chinese?

Tian: Yes, I do. What about him?

Wang: He speaks Chinese too, we all speak Chinese.

Tian: How well does he speak Chinese?

Wang: He speaks very well.

Tian: And you?

Wang: I don't speak well.

Tian: Do you write Chinese characters well?

Wang: I write them well.

We all study foreign languages. I study Chinese, he studies French. I speak Chinese well (but) I do not write characters well. He speaks French very well, and he also writes French well too.

1. 3 Have You Ever Been to China?

Tian: Tell me, is China big?

Wang: It's big.

Tian: And France?

Wang: France is neither big nor small. Look, this is a map of China.

Tian: Where is Japan?

Wang: China is here, Japan is there.

Tian: Have you ever been to China?

Wang: I've never been.

Tian: Would you like to go?

Wang: I would love to go to China.

Tian: I would like to go to Beijing, Nanjing, Shandong and Shanxi.

China is big, France is neither big nor small. I have never been to China. I would love to go to China. I would like to go to Beijing, Nanjing, Shandong and Shanxi. This is a map of China. Beijing is here, Nanjing is there.

1.4 How Many People Are There in Your Family?

Tian: Where are you going?
Wang: I'm going back home.
Tian: Is your home in the north?
Wang: It's not in the north, it's in the south, in Shanghai.
Tian: How many people are there in your family?
Wang: Four people.
Tian: Do you have any children?
Wang: Yes, two, a boy and a girl.
Tian: Where does your wife work?
Wang: She works in a middle school.
Tian: What is her job?
Wang: She is a teacher.

I am Chinese. My home is in Shanghai. There are four people in my family. I have a son and a daughter. I am a teacher. My wife is also a teacher. She works in a middle school.

1.5 What Would You Like to Drink?

Tian: Little Wang, what would you like to drink?
Wang: Tea, and you?
Tian: I'd like a glass of Coca-Cola.
Wang: This is not the place to drink Coca-Cola, it's a tea house.
Tian: Oh! If it's where you drink tea, fine, I want a cup of tea.
Wang: Would you like jasmine tea or "red tea"?
Tian: What is "red tea"?
Wang: In France it's called black tea.
Tian: What do French people like to drink?
Wang: We like to drink wine. Have you ever drunk French wine?
Tian: No, I haven't. Do French people drink boiling water?
Wang: No they don't, they drink cold water.

I come from the north. I like to drink jasmine tea. My children like to drink Coca-Cola. My students are all French. They like to drink wine.

French people also like to drink black tea. They don't drink boiling water, they drink cold water.

1.6 When Are You Going to China?

Tian: When are you going to China?
Wang: I'm going in July this year.
Tian: How are you going, by plane or by train?
Wang: I'm going by plane and coming back by train.
Tian: How many days does the train take?
Wang: It takes eight days. By plane it takes sixteen hours.
Tian: Have you bought a plane ticket?
Wang: Not yet.
Tian: Do many people buy tickets?
Wang: Quite a few.

I intend to go to China in September of this year. My teacher says it takes eight days to go to China by train and sixteen hours by plane. I don't like travelling by train, I like aeroplanes. I want to go to China by plane. I still haven't bought a plane ticket. I think I'll buy the plane ticket in March.

2.1 Hello!

Zhang Jiaoyuan: Hello, little Wang! We haven't seen each other for a long time. How have you been lately?
Wang Wanmin: Quite well!
Zhang: Have you finished reading that pictorial?
Wang: Not yet.
Zhang: Who's that person?
Wang: He's my friend, Wang Lizhong.
Zhang: When did you two meet?
Wang: February last year.
Zhang: How old is he?
Wang: Twenty-nine.
Zhang: O. K. I'm going. When you have time, come to my home. Byebye!
Wang: Byebye!

I have a Chinese friend named Wang Lizhong, we met in 1985 in Beijing. I went to his home in Beijing. His wife is a university professor. He has a six-year-old daughter. I haven't seen him in a long time, I miss him a lot.

2.2 How Long Have You Been Studying?

Zhang: Have you ever studied Chinese?

Wang: Yes, and you?

Zhang: I'm studying Chinese now.

Wang: How long have you been studying?

Zhang: All my classmates have been studying for one year, I've only been studying for half a year.

Wang: What's your Chinese like now?

Zhang: I can speak a little. I can't read books.

Wang: In class can you understand what the teacher says?

Zhang: So-so; yesterday the teacher read a text, I didn't understand.

Wang: What time do you begin class today?

Zhang: I start at 8 o'clock and finish at 9.30.

I am now studying Chinese. Today we start class at 8 o'clock, and finish at 9.30. My classmates have all been studying for one year. I've only been studying for half a year. I can speak a little now; I can't read books. I can understand some Chinese people speaking Chinese but not others. In class, I can understand everything the teacher says.

2.3 What Is the Population of China?

Zhang: Let me ask you a question. What is the population of China?

Wang: I don't know, a lot surely!

Zhang: Let me ask another question, how long are the Yangtze and the Yellow Rivers?

Wang: I don't know, probably very long.

Zhang: So, what do you know?

Wang: I know that the population of Sichuan is very large, that China has a lot of bicycles and that Chinese people eat with chopsticks.

Chang: Do you know where Confucius' birthplace is?

Wang: In Shandong.

Zhang: What else do you know?

Wang: Shandong is east of Shanxi. Hunan is south of Hubei.

China is a great country, it's population is very big. The Yangtze and the Yellow Rivers are very long. Sichuan is very big. It's in the southwest of China. I also know that China has many bicycles and that Chinese people eat with chopsticks. I have been to Confucius' birthplace; his birthplace is in Shandong. Shandong is east of Shanxi.

2.4 Is Your Wife at Home?

Zhang: Who's there?

Wang: It's me, little Wang.

Zhang: Oh! Little Wang, please come in!

Wang: What are you doing?

Zhang: Reading the paper.

Wang: Is your wife at home?

Zhang: No, she's just gone out. She's gone to work. Today is my day off.

Wang: Whose child is this? She's so lovely.

Zhang: My elder brother's.

Wang: Where does your brother live?

Zhang: His house is not far from the telegram building. Tomorrow, my wife and I are going to see him.

Wang: If I give my friend a phone call, is that O.K.?

Zhang: Yes.

I have an elder brother, his home is not far from the telegram building. His wife is a teacher. She works in a middle school. They have a daughter. She goes to primary school now. She's lovely! I like her very much! My brother gave me a phone call today. He said that he had a day off tomorrow. I think I'll go to see them tomorrow with my boyfriend.

2.5 What Dishes Would You Like?

Zhang: How many are you?

Wang: Two people.

Zhang: Please take a seat. What dishes would you like? There's fish, chicken, beef and lamb.

Wang: Bring us Chinese cabbage and a caramelised pork.

Zhang: Would you like rice or ravioli?

Wang: I hear your restaurant's ravioli isn't bad. I'm hungry. First bring me four *liang* of ravioli.

Zhang: Can you use chopsticks?

Wang: Not very well. When I use chopsticks I can't eat very quickly.

Zhang: "Eat slowly!" (enjoy your meal!)

Wang: Thank you!

Yesterday, my friend and I ate Chinese food. We ate fish, chicken, beef and lamb. I also ordered a dish of Chinese cabbage. My friend also ordered caramelised pork. Yesterday we were all very

hungry. We ate our *liang* of rice and six *liang* of ravioli. My friend can use chopsticks and eats very quickly with them. I can't use chopsticks. I eat very slowly. We were eating for two hours.

2.6 Anyone Wants Tickets?

Zhang: Anyone to buy tickets?

Wang: Two tickets to Tian'anmen. How much per ticket?

Zhang: Five *mao*.

Wang: Here's one *kuai*. From here to Tian'anmen how many stops are there?

Wang: Three stops.

Wang: Excuse me, how can I get to Beijing Hospital by bus?

Zhang: When you get off the bus change to Bus No. 22.

Wang: Where's the No. 22 bus stop?

Zhang: When you get off go straight ahead. The No. 22 bus stop is right there.

Wang: To go to Beijing hospital where do I get off the bus?

Zhang: At Qianmen.

I know how to get to Tian'anmen Square by bus. From here you take No. 332 ten stops and get off at Xisi. After getting off you take No. 22 and get off at Tian'anmen. Walk forward and Tian'anmen is right there. From here to Xisi is five *mao*. From Xisi to Tian'anmen is also five *mao*.

3.1 What Are You Reading?

Guan Fanghuo: What are you reading?

Bao Gengsheng: *Tintin*. My father just bought it in the shop across the road.

Guan: Who wrote it?

Bao: I don't know, have you read this book before?

Guan: Yes. Do you like Thomson and Thompson?

Bao: They're not the main characters but I like them the best.

Guan: It seems that Thomson is one year older than Thompson.

Bao: No, they're the same age but Thomson is a bit taller than Thompson.

Guan: Can you finish reading this book by tomorrow? My mum would like to have a look.

Bao: Probably. If I finish it tonight, I'll give it to

you tomorrow morning.

Guan: That way my mother will be very happy.

I really like this *Tintin* book, I also like the character Tintin. My parents and I have all read this book. We read *Tintin* in French, not in Chinese. I still can't understand them in Chinese. My father and mother like Thomson and Thompson best. These two characters are the same age but Thomson is a bit taller than Thompson. They are Tintin's good friends.

3.2 What Does This Character Mean?

Guan: Bao Gengsheng, is this character written with a pen?

Bao: No, it's written with a brush.

Guan: How is this character pronounced? What does it mean?

Bao: Cuò is the cuò in búcuò. It means "wrong".

Guan: Do you find Chinese characters hard to write?

Bao: Very hard. My characters are big and ugly.

Guan: Do you have a calligraphy class?

Bao: Yes, I go to calligraphy class every Wednesday afternoon. Look here are a few calligraphy books.

Guan: Some people say to write characters every day is good for your health. Is that true?

Bao: It's true, Guan Fanghuo, why don't you study calligraphy?

Guan: I'd like to learn but I'm too busy. I don't have time.

Every Wednesday afternoon we go to calligraphy class. I really like Chinese calligraphy. I've bought a few calligraphy books. This is my calligraphy. This character is the zhōng in Zhōngguó. This character is the jīng in Běijīng. These characters are all written with a brush. I think Chinese calligraphy looks very good but it's hard to learn.

3.3 How Many Times Have You Been to Beijing?

Guan: Is there a great difference between the north and the south of China?

Bao: Yes there is. The weather, the language and the food are all dissimilar.

Guan: I hear it often rains in the south and the people don't understand southerners when they speak. Winter in Beijing is very cold; the wind is very strong in spring.

Bao: True! But autumn is the best season in Beijing, not hot, not cold. I like Beijing's autumn very much!

Guan: Is Beijing an ancient city?

Bao: Yes, it's also the centre of Chinese culture.

Guan: How many times have you been to Beijing?

Bao: Twice. Beijing has Tian'anmen Square, Beihai Park and the Great Wall.

Guan: I know that some people say the scenery in the south is more beautiful.

Bao: But "if you haven't been to the Great Wall you're not a true man"!

I have been to China many times. I know there are great differences between the north and the south. The weather, language and food are all dissimilar. Winter is very cold in the north; the wind is strong in spring. It often rains in the south. When northern Chinese people speak it is easy to understand them. But sometimes it is difficult to understand southerners speaking. The scenery in the south is very beautiful. I've been to Beijing three times. I really like this city. Beijing is an ancient city, and it's also the centre of Chinese culture. Beijing is best in autumn; it is not cold nor hot. In Beijing, there's Tian'anmen Square, Beihai Park and the Great Wall.

3.4 What Medicine Are You Taking?

Guan: Is this Bao Gengsheng's house? I'd like to speak to Gengsheng.

Bao: Speaking! Is that Little Guan?

Guan: Yes, how come you still haven't come? There's five minutes left, the film is about to start.

Bao: I'm sorry, I'm sick, I've got a headache.

Guan: Have you been to the hospital?

Bao: Yes, the doctor says I must take some medicine.

Guan: What medicine are you taking?

Bao: Two types of medicine, sedatives and "Dragon Brains", both Western and Chinese medicine. The doctor also ordered not to go out, to stay at home for three days.

Guan: What type of medicine is "Dragon Brains"? How come I've never heard of that type of

medicine before?

Bao: It's a new medicine.

Guan: Oh! Rest up well, see you next week!

Yesterday, I didn't go to Guan Fanghuo's house to watch a film. I was sick, I had a headache. The doctor told me not to go out, to stay at home and rest for three days. I'm taking a lot of medicine, both western medicine and Chinese medicine. The western medicine is sedatives; the Chinese medicine is "Dragon Brains". "Dragon Brains" is a new type of medicine. It's the first time I've taken it. I hear that this medicine is very good. I have to take these medicines for three days. Next week I'll go back to the hospital and see.

3.5 What Have You Bought?

Guan: Little Bao, who are you standing here waiting for?

Bao: I'm waiting for Old Wang.

Guan: I almost forgot. Old Wang came at 2 o'clock, how come you just got here?

Bao: (Because) I took the wrong bus, so I got here late.

Guan: Old Wang asked me to take you to his office. Give me your bag!

Bao: Don't bother! My bag's too heavy, I'll carry it. You carry this light one.

Guan: What have you bought?

Bao: Many things, a radio, clothes, appliances, food, a bit of everything.

Guan: Where did you buy it all?

Bao: In shop, open all day and night.

Guan: Were those things expensive? How many *kuai* did you spend altogether?

Bao: Some were expensive, others weren't. Altogether, I spent over 80 *kuai*.

Guan: You spent all your money!

Bao: Of course!

Today I went shopping and I bought many things. Food, everyday objects, a little of everything. As for food products, there's chicken, fish, meat, and wine. As for everyday objects there's a radio, a handbag, and clothes. The food wasn't very expensive, the objects were expensive. I spent a lot of money, over 80 *kuai*. I came back by bus. (Because) I took the wrong bus so I didn't get back till 11. Old Wang didn't wait for me. Guan

Fanghuo took me to Old Wang's office.

3.6 I Hope You Have a Safe Trip!

Guan: The plane takes off at a quarter past four in the afternoon. How are you going to the airport?

Bao: I'm going by bicycle.

Guan: You've really become Chinese.

Bao: "Go to a mountain, sing its song" (When in Rome, do as the Romans do).

Guan: When you get back home, what job will you do?

Bao: Maybe I'll become headmaster of a school.

Guan: You really are "giving birth on a plane—going up in the world".

Bao: It's nothing, it's nothing.

Guan: The airport is too far. Let's call a taxi!

Bao: If it's convenient, I'll get a taxi. Where is there a public phone?

Guan: Beside the zoo. Don't forget to write me a letter when you get to San Francisco.

Bao: All right. (But) this time I'm going home for a long time; however, I'll write to you often.

Guan: Good, I hope you have a safe trip!

This afternoon at a quarter past four I took a plane to San Francisco. My friend said the airport is too far, so it's convenient to go by taxi. I called for a taxi. We went to the airport by taxi. At the airport, my friend asked me to write to him when I got to San Francisco. I said I definitely wouldn't forget. Although this time I'm going home to work for a long time, I'll still write to him often. When I was about to get on the plane he said to me, "I hope you have a safe trip!"

Supplementary Text 1

A Landscape Painting

Seen from afar, the mountain has colours.

Heard up close, the water noiseless.

Spring is leaving, the flowers remain.

People come, the birds are fearless.

Supplementary Text 2

Zhuangzi and the Butterfly

One day Zhuangzi fell asleep in a garden. He had

a dream. He dreamt he was a beautiful butterfly. It flew east, it flew west until it was so tired from flying that it fell asleep. The butterfly had a dream too. It dreamt it was Zhuangzi. Just then Zhuangzi woke up. He didn't know if he was really Zhuangzi or the Zhangzi in the butterfly's dream. Nor did he know if he had dreamt of being a butterfly or if a butterfly had dreamt of being him.

Supplementary Text 3

Old Meat

A boy went to the butcher's and said to the shop owner: "Mum told me to tell you that the meat you sell is not up to standard. It's old and tough, you could almost make shoe soles from it."

The shop owner replied: "So, why don't you make shoe soles from it?" The boy said: "At first mother was going to make shoe soles from it but she hammered for ages and even the nails wouldn't go in!"

Nanniwan

The flowers in the basket are fragrant,

Hear me sing, hear me sing!

Come to Nanniwan, Nanniwan's a great place, a great place!

A great place, beautiful scenery!

A great place, beautiful scenery!

Crops are all around, sheep and cattle everywhere.

GRAMMAR REVIEW

Syntax

- * 你是老师。
你是老师吗?
- * 你是他的老师。
你是谁的老师?
- * 去年/我/给他/买了/一本书。
明天/小王/坐火车/去/北京。

Measure Words

- * 一个人 五块钱 一些人 这种字 几两米饭
两本书 五毛钱 三分钟 这路车 一份儿白菜
三口人 五分钱 三刻钟 那位老师 一张地图
一杯水 几站地 一小时 一小时飞机
- * 这个人 三个人 几个人
- * 去过一次 再说一遍 吃一点儿

The Particle 的

- * 我的书是中文书。他的不是。
- * 我看的书是中文书。

Interrogatives

- * 吗? 呢?
- * 谁? 什么? 怎么? 怎么样? 多长时间? 几?
哪? 哪儿? 多少? 为什么? 什么时候? 多(长,大,高,重)?
- * 他是谁的学生? 他是我的学生。
他怎么去? 他坐火车去。

Prepositions

- * 跟在给从到离坐用往比对把
- * 我跟他去。我不跟他去。

The Comparative

- * 我比他高。我跟他一样高。我没有他高。
- * 我比他高一点儿。

The 把 bǎ Sentence

- * 我想把这本书放在这儿。
- * 把这本书看看!
- * 我没有把这个东西拿给他。

Adverbs

- * 也/都: 我也是法国人。学生都去那儿。学生不都去那儿。
- * 就: 他来, 我就高兴。
- * 还/又/再: 我还在这儿。他又来了。他明天再来。
- * 才/就: 他走得很慢, 三点才到。他走得很快, 两点就到了。
- * 刚: 他刚出去。
- * 正在: 他正在吃饭。
- 快要…了: 他快要走了。

Verbs and Qualifying Verbs

- * 我吃饭/我吃肉。我看书/我看小人书。
- * 中国很大。中国很远。
- * 我很喜欢喝酒。我很想去这个地方。
- * 他会说汉语。他不能去。

Verbal Aspect Suffixes

- * 着: 门开着。门没开着。他坐着看书。
- * 了: 他买了一本书。他没买这本书。
- * 过: 他去过中国。他没去过中国。

Complement of Appreciation

- * 他学得好不好?
- * 他汉语学得怎么样?

Resultatives and Directionals

- * 我听懂了。他说完了。你找到了吗？我没看见他。
- * 他进去了。他出去了。他回家去。



他出来。



他出去。

Potential Complements

- * 你看得懂这本书吗？
- * 老师说的话，我听不懂。

Final Particles

- * 吗 他在中国吗？
- * 啊 是你啊！
- * 吧 走吧！你是中国人吧？
- * 了 我是老师了。下雨了！不下雨了！
- * 呢 他还在吃饭呢！

Constructions

- * 因为这本书很难懂，所以我还没有看完。
- * 虽然天气不好，可是他出去了。
- * 他是一九八九年出生的。他是坐飞机来的。
- * 如果你不来的话，我就去。
- * 谁都会写这个汉字。那个地方什么都有。
- * 他在中国的时候，每天写毛笔字。
- * 他在我旁边。商店在学校东边。小说里有很多人物。

VOCABULARY

(* : Indicates that a character has two pronunciations)

A				北京	Běijīng	Beijing	1. 1/3. 3
啊	a	[exclamative particle]	song	北京人	Běijīng rén	a native of Beijing	1. 3
爱	ài	to love	1. 4	本	běn	[Mw]	0
爱国	àiguó	patriot	1. 4	本国	běnguó	this country	0
爱好	àihào	hobby	1. 4	本来	běnlái	originally	1. 6
爱人	àiren	wife or husband	1. 4	本人	běnrén	myself	0/0. 5
安	ān	peace	2. 6	本身	běنشēn	oneself	3. 2
安定	āndìng	sedative (calming)	3. 4	本月	běnyuè	this month	1. 1
				本子	běnzǐ	exercise book	1. 4
B				比	bǐ	compared to (than)	3. 1
八	bā	eight	number	比方说	bǐfāngshuō	for example	3. 1
八月	bāyuè	August	date	比如	bǐrú	for example	3. 1
八字	bāzì	horoscope	1. 1	比一比	bǐyībǐ	to compare	3. 1
把	bǎ	[preposition transposing the object before the verb]	3. 5	笔	bǐ	brush	3. 2
把关	bǎguān	to be responsible for	3. 5	笔画	bǐhuà	stroke	3. 2
吧	ba	[exclamative particle]	2. 3	笔名	bǐmíng	pen name	3. 2
白	bái	white	2. 5	边	biān	side	2. 3
白菜	báicài	Chinese cabbage	2. 5	便	biàn	so, convenient	3. 6
白饭	báifàn	rice	2. 5	便饭	biànfàn	simple cooking	3. 6
白话	báihuà	vernacular	2. 5	遍	biàn	everywhere, time (i. e. number of times)	song
白酒	báijiǔ	rice wine, white spirit	2. 5	遍地	biàndì	everywhere	song
白面	báimiàn	flour	3. 1	别	bié	don't; other	3. 3
白手起家	báishǒuqǐjiā	succeed from nothing	3. 5	别的	biéde	another	3. 3
白天	báitiān	daytime	2. 5	别人	biérén	others	3. 3
百	bǎi	one hundred	number	病	bìng	sickness	3. 4
百发百中	bǎifābǎizhòng	to hit the target every time	3. 2	病人	bìngrén	a sick person	3. 4
班	bān	class	2. 2	不	bù	no, not	0
班长	bānzhǎng	class monitor	2. 2	不安	bù'ān	nervous, not calm	2. 6
半	bàn	half	2. 2	不常	bùcháng	rarely, not often	3. 3
半天	bàntiān	a long time	2. 2	不错	búcuò	not bad	2. 5
半夜	bànyè	midnight	3. 5	不都	búdōu	not all	1. 25
办	bàn	to do	3. 5	不贵	búguì	inexpensive	1. 1
办不到	bànbudào	can't be done	3. 5	不过	búguò	but	3. 2
办法	bànfǎ	method, way	3. 5	不好过	bùhǎoguò	distressing	1. 3
办公室	bàngōngshì	office	3. 5	不好说	bùhǎoshuō	not easy to say	1. 25
办事	bànshì	to handle (an affair)	3. 5	不好意思	bùhǎoyìsi	to be embarrassed	3. 2
包	bāo	parcel	3. 1	不久	bùjiǔ	before long	2. 1
包子	bāozi	stuffed steamed dumpling	3. 1	不然	bùrán	otherwise	3. 6
报	bào	newspaper	2. 1	不如	bùrú	not as good as	3. 1
报名	bàomíng	to enroll, to sign up	2. 1	不三不四	bùsānbùsì	dubious, shady	0
杯	bēi	a glass of	1. 5	不识字	bùshízi	to be illiterate	2. 1
杯子	bēizi	glass	1. 5	不同	bùtóng	different	2. 2
北	běi	north	1. 1/1. 3	不一定	bùyídìng	not sure, may not	3. 4
北方	běifāng	in the north	1. 4	不一样	bùyíyàng	not the same	1. 25
北海	Běihǎi	Beihai Park	3. 3	不用	bùyòng	don't bother to...	2. 3/3. 5
				不在	búzài	to be absent	1. 3
				不怎么样	bùzěnmeyàng	not very good	1. 25

大小	dàxiǎo	size	0	点心	diǎnxin	light refreshments (dim-sum)	3.3
大学	dàxué	university	1.2	电	diàn	electricity	2.4
大学生	dàxuéshēng	university student	1.2	电报	diànbào	telegram	2.4
大衣	dàyī	jacket	3.5	电车	diànchē	tram, trolleybus	2.4
大自然	dàzìrán	nature	3.6	电工	diàngōng	electrician	2.4
大夫	dàifu	doctor	3.4	电话	diànhuà	telephone	2.4
带	dài	to carry, to bring	3.5	电脑	diànnǎo	computer	3.4
当	dāng	to work as, to serve as	3.6	电脑化	diànnǎohuà	to computerise	3.4
	dàng	to regard as	3.6	电能	diànnéng	electric energy	2.4
当场	dāngchǎng	on the spot	3.6	电影	diànyǐng	film	3.4
当地	dāngdì	local	3.6	电影院	diànyǐngyuàn	cinema	3.4
当然	dāngrán	of course	3.6	电子	diànzǐ	electron	2.4
当时	dāngshí	then, at that time	3.6	店	diàn	shop	3.1
当中	dāngzhōng	among	3.6	店主	diànzhǔ	shop owner	3.1
当做	dàngzuò	to regard as	3.6	蝶	dié	butterfly	ST2
到	dào	to arrive; until	2.1	丁丁	dīng	diced food	3.1
到处	dàochù	everywhere	song	丁丁	Dīngdīng	Tintin	3.1
道	dào	way	2.3	钉	dīng	nail	ST3
道家	dàojiā	Daoist	2.3		dīng	to nail, to hammer	ST3
道教	dàojiào	Daoism	2.3	钉子	dīngzi	nail	ST3
道路	dàolù	road, way	2.6	定	dìng	to set, to fix, to decide	3.4
道谢	dàoxiè	to express one's thanks	2.5	定语	dìngyǔ	predicate	3.4
的	de	[grammatical word]	1.2	东	dōng	east	1.3
...的话	...dehuà	if...	3.5	东北	dōngběi	north-east	1.3
...的时候	...de shíhou	when...	1.6	东边	dōngbiān	in the east	2.3
地	de *	[grammatical word]	3.4	东方	dōngfāng	Orient	1.4
得	de *	[grammatical word]	1.25	东京	Dōngjīng	Tokyo	1.3
	dé	to obtain	1.25	东西	dōngxi	things	3.5
得到	dédào	to obtain	2.1	冬	dōng	winter	1.2
得了	déle	That's enough!	1.6	冬天	dōngtiān	wintertime	1.6/3.3
得	děi *	must	3.4	懂	dǒng	to understand	2.2
等	děng	to wait	3.5	动	dòng	to move	3.6
等等	děngděng	etc., and so on...	3.5	动画片	dòng huà piān	cartoon	3.6
底	dǐ	bottom, base	ST3	动机	dòngjī	motive, intention	3.6
地	dì *	ground, earth	1.3	动人	dòng rén	moving, touching	3.6
地点	dìdiǎn	address, place	1.5	动物	dòngwù	animal	3.6
地方	dìfang	place	1.4	动物园	dòngwùyuán	zoo	3.6
地区	dìqū	area, district	3.3	动作	dòngzuò	movement, action	3.6
地儿	dìr	place	1.3	都	dōu	all	1.25
地上	dìshàng	on the ground	1.4	都不	dōubù	none	1.25
地图	dìtú	map	1.3	杜	Dù	[surname]	3.1
地位	dìwèi	position, status	2.4	杜本	Dùběn	Thomson	3.1
地中海	Dìzhōnghǎi	the Mediterranean Sea	1.4	杜朋	Dùpéng	Thompson	3.1
地中海人	Dìzhōnghǎirén	a Mediterranean person	1.4	对	duì	correct, right; to	3.1
地主	dìzhǔ	owner, landlord	3.1	对比	duìbǐ	comparison	3.1
第	dì	[ordinal prefix]... st, ... nd number		对不起	duìbuqǐ	I'm sorry, Excuse me	3.4
点	diǎn	point	1.5	对方	duìfāng	the other party, the other side	3.1
点菜	diǎncài	to order food	2.5	对话	duìhuà	dialogue	3.1
点名	diǎnmíng	to call the roll	1.5	对立	duìlì	to oppose	3.1
点头	diǎntóu	to nod one's head	3.4	对面	duìmiàn	opposite	3.1

对象	duìxiàng	target, boy or girl friend	3. 1	房租	fángzū	rent	3. 6
多	duō	many, much	2. 1	放	fàng	to put, to place	3. 1
多半儿	duōbànr	most; mostly	2. 2	放大	fàngdà	to enlarge, to magnify	3. 1
多长时间	duōcháng shíjiān	how long? how much time?	2. 1	放活	Fànghuó	[given name]	3. 1
多久	duōjiǔ	how long?	2. 1	放火	fànghuǒ	to set fire to, to light	3. 1
多少	duōshao	how many? how much?	2. 3	放牛	fàngniú	to graze cattle	3. 1
多谢	duōxiè	Thank you very much!	2. 5	放心	fàngxīn	to feel relieved, to set one's	

E

饿	è	to be hungry	2. 5	放学	fàngxué	school lets out	3. 1
儿	ér	son	1. 1	飞	fēi	to fly	1. 6
儿歌	érgē	nursery rhyme, children's song	3. 6	飞来	fēilái	to come by flying	1. 6
儿子	érzi	son	1. 4	飞机	fēijī	aeroplane	1. 6
二	èr	two	number	飞机场	fēijīchǎng	airport	3. 3
二哥	èrgē	second brother	2. 4	飞去	fēiqù	to go by flying	1. 6
二月	èryuè	February	date	非	fēi	not, wrong	1. 6

F

发	fā	to emit; hair	3. 2	分别	fēnbíe	to distinguish, to separate	3. 3
发红	fāhóng	to become red, border on red	3. 2	分工	fēngōng	division of labour	2. 6
发明	fāmíng	invention	3. 2	分会	fēnhuì	branch, association	2. 6
发票	fāpiào	invoice, receipt, bill	3. 2	分开	fēnkāi	to separate	2. 6
发生	fāshēng	to happen, to occur	3. 2	分手	fēnshǒu	to part company	3. 5
发现	fāxiàn	to realise	3. 2	分钟	fēnzhōng	a minute	3. 4
发行	fāxíng	to issue, to distribute	3. 2	份	fèn	part	2. 5
发言	fāyán	to speak, to make a speech	3. 3	份儿	fènr	part	2. 5
发音	fāyīn	pronunciation	3. 2	份儿饭	fènrfàn	set meal	2. 5
法	fǎ	law, method	0. 5	风	fēng	wind	3. 3
法国	Fǎguó	France	0. 5	风光	fēngguāng	scenery	song
法国人	Fǎguó rén	a French person	0. 5	风水	fēngshuǐ	geomancy	3. 3
法文	Fǎwén	French (written language)	1. 25	风衣	fēngyī	windbreaker	3. 5
法学	fǎxué	law, legal studies	1. 2	夫	fū	adult	3. 4
法语	Fǎyǔ	French (spoken language)	1. 25	夫人	fūrén	lady, Mrs	3. 4
法院	fǎyuàn	law court	2. 6	服	fú	clothing; to serve	3. 5
法中	Fǎ-Zhōng	French-Chinese	0. 5	服从	fúcóng	to obey	3. 5
饭	fàn	food, meal	2. 3	父	fù	father	3. 1
饭菜	fàncài	cuisine	2. 4/3. 3	父母	fùmǔ	parents	3. 1
饭店	fàndiàn	hotel, restaurant	3. 1	父亲	fùqīn	father	3. 1
饭馆	fànguǎn	restaurant	2. 3	父子	fùzǐ	father and son	3. 1
方	fāng	direction	1. 4				
方便	fāngbiàn	to be convenient	3. 6				
方法	fāngfǎ	method	1. 4				
方块字	fāngkuàizì	Chinese (square) characters	2. 6				
方面	fāngmiàn	aspect	3. 1				
方言	fāngyán	dialect	3. 3				
房	fáng	house	2. 4				
房东	fángdōng	owner, landlord, landlady	2. 4				
房间	fángjiān	room	2. 4				
房子	fángzi	house	2. 4				

G

干	gān	dry	2. 4				
	gàn	to do	2. 4				
干杯	gānbēi	Cheers! to drink a toast	2. 4				
干果	gānguǒ	dried fruit	3. 1				
干冷	gānlěng	dry cold	3. 3				
干热	gānrè	dry heat	3. 3				
干活儿	gànhuór	to work	3. 1				
干吗	gànmá	why? how come?	2. 4				
刚	gāng	just	2. 4				

刚才	gāngcái	just now	3.1	公用	gōngyòng	public (use)	3.3/3.6
刚刚	gānggāng	just	2.4	公园	gōngyuán	park	3.3
钢	gāng	steel	3.2	共	gòng	common	3.5
钢笔	gāngbǐ	fountain pen	3.2	共和国	gònghéguó	republic	3.5
高	gāo	tall	3.1	共事	gòngshì	to work together, collaborate	3.5
高楼	gāolóu	high building	3.5	共同	gòngtóng	common	3.5
高升	gāoshēng	to be promoted	3.6	共同市场	gòngtóng	the Common Market	3.5
高兴	gāoxìng	happy	3.1		shìchǎng		
高中	gāozhōng	high school	3.1	古	gǔ	ancient	2.5
告	gào	to inform	ST3	古城	gǔchéng	ancient city	3.3
告诉	gàosu	to tell, to warn	ST3	古今中外	gǔjīnzhōngwài	always and everywhere	2.5
哥	gē	elder brother	2.4	古老	gǔlǎo	ancient	2.5/3.3
哥哥	gēge	elder brother	2.4	古老肉	gǔlǎoròu	caramelised pork	2.5
哥们儿	gēmenr	buddy	2.4	古时	gǔshí	old days, ancient times	2.5
歌	gē	song	3.6	古文	gǔwén	ancient Chinese prose	2.5
歌唱	gēchàng	to sing	3.6	关	guān	to close	3.1
歌唱家	gēchàngjiā	singer	3.6	关心	guānxīn	to be concerned about	3.1
歌儿	gēr	song	3.6	馆	guǎn	establishment (shops etc.)	1.5
歌手	gēshǒu	singer	3.6	光	guāng	flash of light	song
个	gè	[Mw]	1.4	广	guǎng	wide	3.3
个别	gèbié	individual, particular	3.3	广大	guǎngdà	wide, vast	3.3
个儿	gèr	size (height)	1.4	广场	guǎngchǎng	a square, a plaza	3.3
个人	gèrén	an individual	1.4	广东	Guǎngdōng	Guangdong Province	3.3
个子	gèzi	size (height)	1.4	广西	Guǎngxī	Guangxi Province	3.3
给	gěi	to give to	2.4	贵	guì	expensive, precious	1.1
跟	gēn	with, accompanied by	2.4	贵国	guìguó	your (honourable) country	1.1
跟着	gēnzhe	to follow	3.5	贵校	guìxiào	your (honourable) school	3.6
更	gēng	to change	3.1	贵姓	guìxìng	your (honourable) surname	1.1
	gèng	more	3.1	国	guó	country	1.1
更生	Gēngshēng	[given name]	3.1	国歌	guógē	national anthem	3.6
更生	gēngshēng	to regenerate, to revive	3.1	国画	guóhuà	traditional painting	2.1
更衣室	gēngyīshì	change room, locker room	3.5	国家	guójiā	country	1.4
更正	gēngzhèng	to correct, to rectify	3.1	国民	guómín	national	2.1
更好	gènghǎo	better	3.1	国外	guówài	abroad	1.25
更喜欢	gèng xǐhuān	to prefer	3.1	国王	guówáng	king	0
工	gōng	work	1.4	国语	guóyǔ	national language	1.25
工会	gōnghuì	trade union	2.2	果	guǒ	fruit	3.1
工人	gōngrén	worker	1.4	果园	guǒyuán	orchard	3.3
工作	gōngzuò	work; to work	1.4	过	guò	to cross, to pass; [verbal suffix]	1.3
公	gōng	public	3.3	过分	guòfèn	excessive	2.6
公安	gōng'ān	public security	3.3	过年	guònián	to celebrate new year	1.3/1.6
公法	gōngfǎ	public law	3.3	过去	guòqù	the past	1.3
公分	gōngfēn	centimetre	3.3	过时	guòshí	out of date	1.6
公共汽车	gōnggòngqìchē	bus	3.5				
公鸡	gōngjī	rooster	3.3				
公家	gōngjiā	the state, the public	1.4				
公开	gōngkāi	open, public, overt	3.3				
公里	gōnglǐ	kilometre	3.3				
公牛	gōngniú	beef cattle	3.3				
公平	gōngpíng	fair	3.6				

H

还	hái *	still	1.5/1.2
还是	háishi	still, or	1.5
孩	hái	child	1.4

孩子	háizi	child	1.4	湖	hú	lake	2.3
孩子王	háiziwáng	king of children (teacher)	1.4	湖北	Húběi	Hubei Province	2.3
海	hǎi	sea	1.4	湖南	Húnán	Hunan Province	2.3
海关	hǎiguān	customs (border control)	3.1	蝴蝶	hú	butterfly	ST2
海南	Hǎinán	Hainan Island	1.4	蝴蝶	húdié	butterfly	ST2
汉	Hàn	Han, Chinese	1.25	虎	hǔ	tiger	2.2
汉人	Hànren	Han	1.25	虎年	hǔnián	year of the tiger	2.2
汉文	Hànwén	Chinese (written language)	1.25	花	huā	flower, to spend	1.5
汉学	Hànxué	Sinology	1.25	花茶	huāchá	jasmin tea	1.5/3.5
汉语	Hànyǔ	Chinese (spoken language)	1.25	花篮	huālán	flower basket	song
汉字	Hànzì	Chinese characters	1.25	花钱	huāqián	to spend money	2.6
行	háng *	trade, line of business	2.3	花生	huāshēng	peanut	1.5
好	hǎo	good	1.25	花园	huāyuán	garden	3.3/ST2
	hào	to like	1.25	话	huà	word	2.2
好不好	hǎobuǎo	O. K. ?	1.25	化	huà	to change	3.3
好吃	hǎochī	delicious, good to eat	2.3	化学	huàxué	chemistry	3.3
好汉	hǎohàn	brave man, (lit. good man)	3.3	化学所	huàxuésuǒ	chemistry institute	3.5
好看	hǎokàn	good looking, beautiful	1.3	画	huà	to draw; drawing	2.1
好说	hǎoshuō	easy to say	1.25	画报	huàbào	pictorial, illustrated magazine	2.1
好像	hǎoxiàng	it seems that...	3.1	画画	huàhuà	to draw	2.1
好写	hǎoxiě	easy to write	1.25	画家	huàjiā	painter	2.1
好学	hǎoxué	easy to learn	1.25/2.5	画儿	huàr	painting, drawing	2.1
好意	hǎoyì	good intention	3.2	画室	huàshì	an artist's studio	3.5
喝	hē	to drink	1.5	画图	huàtú	to draw, to design (maps etc.)	2.1
和	hé	and	3.1	欢	huān	happy, joyful	1.5
和平	héping	peace	3.6	欢乐	huānlè	happy, joyful	1.5
和气	héqì	kind, gentle	3.3	还	huán *	to give back	1.5
河	hé	river	2.3	黄	huáng	yellow	2.3
河北	Héběi	Hebei Province	2.3	黄的	huángde	yellow	2.3
河口	hekǒu	river mouth	2.3	黄河	Huánghé	the Yellow River	2.3
河南	Hénán	Henan Province	2.3	黄酒	huánghjiǔ	yellow rice wine	2.3
河山	heshān	land, territory	2.3	回	huí	to return	1.4
黑	hēi	black	1.5	回来	huílái	to come back	1.6
黑的	hēide	black	1.5	回音	huíyīn	echo, reply	3.2
黑龙江	Hēilóngjiāng	Heilongjiang Province	3.4	会	huì	association, meeting; can	2.2
黑人	hēiren	Black person	1.5	会话	huìhuà	dialogue	2.2
黑市	hēishì	black market	3.3	会见	huìjiàn	to have an interview	2.2
黑夜	hēiyè	night	3.5	会长	huìzhǎng	president of an association	2.2
很	hěn	very	0	活	huó	alive; life	3.1
红	hóng	red	1.5	活动	huódòng	activity	3.6
红茶	hóngchá	black tea	1.5	活儿	huór	work, tasks	3.1
红的	hóngde	red	1.5	火	huǒ	fire	1.6
红十字	hóngshìzì	the Red Cross	1.5	火车	huǒchē	train	1.6
候	hòu	to wait	1.6	火车头	huǒchētóu	locomotive	3.4
后	hòu	after, behind	2.6	火车站	huǒchēzhàn	train station	2.6
后边	hòubian	behind	2.6	火花	huǒhuā	spark	1.6
后果	hòuguǒ	consequence	3.1	火候	huǒhou	duration and degree of heating	1.6
后来	hòulái	later, afterwards	2.6	火鸡	huǒjī	turkey	2.5
后年	hòunián	the year after next	2.6	火山	huǒshān	volcano	1.6
后天	hòutiān	the day after tomorrow	2.6	火山口	huǒshānkǒu	crater	1.6

火药	huǒyào	gun powder	3.4
J			
机	jī	machine	1.6
机场	jīchǎng	airport	3.6
机会	jīhuì	chance, opportunity	2.2
鸡	jī	chicken	2.5
鸡丁	jīdīng	diced chicken	3.1
几	jǐ	small tea table	1.4
	jǐ	how many? how much?	1.4
己	jǐ	oneself	3.5
家	jiā	family	1.4
家里人	jiālǐren	family member	2.1
家长	jiāzhǎng	head of a family, parent or guardian	2.2
稼	jià	to sow; crops	song
间	jiān	interval (of time), between	2.1
见	jiàn	to see, to notice	2.1
见面	jiànmiàn	to meet	3.1
江	jiāng	river	2.3
江南	jiāngnán	south of the Yangtze River	2.3
江山	jiāngshān	land, territory	2.3
江西	Jiāngxī	Jiangxi Province	2.3
讲	jiǎng	to speak about	3.2
讲话	jiǎnghuà	to speak, to talk	3.2
教	jiāo	to teach	2.1
	jiào	teaching	2.1
教书	jiāoshū	to teach	2.1
教师	jiàoshī	lecturer	2.1
教室	jiàoshì	classroom	3.5
教学	jiàoxué	education, teaching	2.1
教学法	jiàoxuéfǎ	pedagogics	2.1
教元	jiàoyuán	[given name]	2.1
饺	jiǎo	ravioli	2.5
饺子	jiǎozi	ravioli	2.5
叫	jiào	to be called, to call (name)	1.1
觉	jiào *	sleep	3.2
今	jīn	the present, today	1.6
今后	jīnhòu	from now on	2.6
今年	jīnnián	this year	1.6
今天	jīntiān	today	2.2
金	jīn	gold	3.6
金文	jīnwén	characters on bronze	3.6
金鱼	jīnyú	goldfish	3.6
金子	jīnzi	gold	3.6
近	jìn	near	2.1
近东	Jīndōng	the Near East	2.1
进	jìn	to enter	2.4
进口	jìnkǒu	entrance; to import	2.4
进来	jìnlái	to come in	2.4

进去	jìnqu	to go in	2.4
进城	jìnchéng	to go into town	3.3
京	jīng	capital	1.3
惊	jīng	to be afraid	ST1
九	jiǔ	nine	number
九月	jiǔyuè	September	date
酒	jiǔ	alcohol	1.5
酒杯	jiǔbēi	wine glass (glass for alcohol)	1.5
酒菜	jiǔcài	food and drink (food to go with wine or liquor)	2.5
酒店	jiǔdiàn	wine shop, public bar	3.1
酒家	jiǔjiā	wineshop, restaurant	1.5
久	jiǔ	a long time	2.1
就	jiù	so therefore...	2.6
就要...了	jiùyào...le	to be just about to...	3.4
旧	jiù	old	3.6
旧金山	Jiùjīnshān	San Francisco	3.6
觉	jué *	to feel	3.2
觉得	juéde	to feel that	3.2

k

开	kāi	to open	1.5
开车	kāichē	to drive a car	1.6
开饭	kāifàn	to serve food	2.3
开放	kāifàng	to open; opening	3.1
开花	kāihuā	to bloom, to blossom	1.5
开会	kāihuì	to hold a meeting	2.2
开口	kāikǒu	to open one's mouth	1.5
开门	kāimén	to open the door	2.6
开始	kāishǐ	to begin, to start	3.4
开水	kāishuǐ	boiling water	1.5
开学	kāixué	to return to school (after a holiday)	1.5
开夜车	kāiyèchē	to work at night	3.5
开张	kāizhāng	to open (a shop)	2.1
看	kān	to take care of, to watch	1.3
	kàn	to look at	1.3
看门	kānmén	to guard an entrance	2.6
看病	kànbìng	to see a doctor	3.4
看法	kànfǎ	opinion	1.3
看见	kànjiàn	to notice, to catch sight of	2.1
看看	kànkān	to have a look at	1.3
看来	kànlái	it seems that	1.6
看书	kànshū	to read	2.2
看完	kànwán	to finish reading	2.1
可爱	kě'ài	to be able to	1.5
可爱	kě'ài	lovely, cute	2.4
可不是	kěbúshì	and how! of course!	3.5
可贵	kěguì	precious, valuable	1.5
可可	kěkě	cocoa	1.5

可口	kékǒu	tasty, good to eat	1.5
可口可乐	kékǒukělè	Coca-Cola	1.5
可能	kěnéng	maybe, probably	2.2/2.3
可是	kěshì	but	3.6
可以	kěyǐ	O. K., can, may	2.1
课	kè	lesson, course	2.2
课本	kèběn	textbook	2.2
课文	kèwén	text	2.2
刻	kè	a quarter of an hour; to carve	3.6
刻字	kèzì	to engrave characters	3.6
孔	kǒng	[surname]	2.3
孔家	Kǒngjiā	Confucian	2.3
孔子	Kǒngzǐ	Confucius	2.3
口	kǒu	mouth, opening	1.4
口才	kǒucái	eloquence	3.1
口服	kǒufú	to take orally	3.5
口红	kǒuhóng	lipstick	1.5
口水	kǒushuǐ	saliva	1.5
口音	kǒuyīn	accent	3.2
口语	kǒuyǔ	spoken language	1.4
快	kuài	quick	2.5
快车	kuàichē	express train	2.5
快乐	kuàilè	happy	2.5
快要	kuàiyào	to be about to ...	2.5
块	kuài	piece [Mw]	2.6
筷	kuài	chopsticks	2.3
筷子	kuàizi	chopsticks	2.3

L

来	lái	to come	1.6
来往	láiwǎng	dealings, contact	2.6
来信	láixìn	to send a letter	3.6
篮	lán	basket	song
老	lǎo	old	1.2
老百姓	lǎobǎixìng	common people	1.2
老大	lǎodà	eldest child (in family)	1.2
老二	lǎo'èr	second child	1.2
老虎	lǎohǔ	tiger	2.2
老化	lǎohuà	ageing	3.3
老家	lǎojiā	native place, old home	2.3
老年	lǎonián	old age	1.2
老人	lǎorén	old person	1.2
老人家	lǎorénjia	[a respectful form of address for an old person]	1.4
老师	lǎoshī	teacher	1.2
老头儿	lǎotóur	old man	3.4
老外	lǎowài	foreigner [popular]	1.25
老王	Lǎo Wáng	Old Wang [name]	1.2
老子	Lǎozǐ	Laozi	1.4
乐	lè *	happy	1.5

乐园	lèyuán	paradise	3.3
了	le	[grammatical word]	1.6/2.1/2.2
累	lèi	tired	ST2
冷	lěng	cold	3.3
离开	lí	away from, from	2.4
离开	líkāi	to leave	2.4
李	Lǐ	[surname]	0.5
李白	Lǐ Bái	Li Bai (Li Po)	2.5
李子	lǐzi	plum	1.4
里	lǐ	inside	2.1
里边	lǐbiān	in the inside	2.3
里里外外	lǐlǐwàiwài	inside and outside	2.1
里面	lǐmian	inside	3.1
里头	lǐtou	inside	3.4
里重	Lǐzhòng	[given name]	2.1
立	lì	to stand, to erect	1.1
立场	lìchǎng	position, stand, standpoint	3.3
立冬	lìdōng	the beginning of winter	1.2
立刻	lìkè	immediately	3.6
立体声	lìtǐshēng	stereo sound	3.2
立阳	Lìyáng	[given name]	1.1
连	lián	to join, including; even...	ST3
连...都	lián...dōu	even...	ST3
凉	liáng	cool	1.5
凉快	liángkuài	cool	2.5
凉水	liángshuǐ	cold water	1.5
两	liǎng	two	number
两旁	liǎngpáng	on both sides	3.6
两万	liǎngwàn	twenty thousand	2.1/number
辆	liàng	[Mw]	3.6
零	líng	zero	number
0	líng	zero	number
六	liù	six	number
六月	liùyuè	June	date
龙	lóng	dragon	3.4
龙脑	lóngnǎo	"Dragon Brains"	3.4
龙年	lóngnián	the Year of the Dragon	3.4
楼	lóu	building	2.4
楼房	lóufáng	building	2.4
路	lù	road, [Mw]	2.6
路过	lùguò	to pass by	2.6
路上	lùshàng	on the way, on the road	2.6

M

马	mǎ	horse	0
马车	mǎchē	carriage, cart	1.6
马马虎虎	mǎmǎhūhū	so-so (casual)	2.2
马路	mǎlù	road	2.6
马上	mǎshàng	straight away	1.4
吗	ma	[interrogative particle]	0

难得	nándé	difficult to get	3.2	旁人	pángren	other people	3.6
难过	nánguò	sad	3.2	旁听	pángtīng	visitor (at a meeting etc.)	3.6
难看	nánkàn	ugly	3.2	朋	péng	friend	2.1
难听	nántīng	unpleasant to listen to	3.2	朋友	péngyou	friend	2.1
难忘	nánwàng	unforgettable	3.5	皮	pí	skin, leather	ST3
难写	nánxiě	difficult to write	3.2	皮鞋	píxié	leather shoes	ST3
难学	nánxué	difficult to learn	3.2	片	piān *	photograph	3.4
脑	nǎo	brain	3.4		piàn	slice, tablet	3.4
脑子	nǎozi	head, brain	3.4	片子	piānzi	film	3.4
呢	ne	[interrogative particle]		票	piào	ticket	1.6
		[modal particle]	1.25/2.4	平	píng	equal, flat	3.6
能	néng	can, to be able to	2.2	平常	píngcháng	normally	3.6
能干	nénggàn	to be capable; able	2.4	平等	píngděng	equal; equality	3.6
泥	ní	mud	song	平方米	píngfāngmǐ	square metre	3.6
你	nǐ	you	0.5	平时	píngshí	as usual	3.6
你好	nǐhǎo	hello!	2.1	平行	píngxíng	parallel	3.6
你们	nǐmen	you [plural]	0.5				
你们的	nǐmendě	your [plural]	1.2				
年	nián	year	date/1.6				
年关	niánguān	bad time at the end of the year	3.1	七	qī	seven	number
年会	niánhuì	annual meeting	2.2	七月	qīyuè	July	date
年年	niánnián	every year, yearly	1.6	期	qī	period	date
年轻	niánqīng	young	3.5	骑	qí	by, riding (bicycle, horse etc.)	3.6
年轻人	niánqīngren	young person	3.5	骑马	qímǎ	to ride a horse	3.6
念	niàn	to read aloud	2.2	起	qǐ	to get up	3.4
念书	niànshū	to study, to attend school or university	2.2	起飞	qǐfēi	to take off	3.4/3.6
鸟	niǎo	bird	ST1	起来	qǐlái	to get up	3.4
您	nín	you (polite)	1.1	起名	qǐmíng	to give a name to	3.4
牛	niú	cattle	2.5	起重机	qǐzhòngjī	crane (machine)	3.4
牛肉	niúròu	beef	2.5	起子	qǐzi	bottle opener	3.4
女	nǚ	female; woman, girl	1.4	起作用	qǐzuòyòng	to play a role	3.4
女的	nǚde	female, women's, girls'	1.4	气	qì	breath, air	3.3
女儿	nǚ'ér	daughter	1.4	气候	qìhòu	climate	3.3
女工	nǚgōng	female worker	1.4	汽	qì	steam	2.6
女孩儿	nǚháir	daughter, girl	1.4	汽车	qìchē	car, bus	2.6
女朋友	nǚpéngyou	girlfriend	2.1	汽水	qìshuǐ	soda water, soft drink	2.6
女人	nǚrén	woman	1.4	千	qiān	one thousand	number
女生	nǚshēng	female student	1.4	前	qián	before, in front of	2.6
女士	nǚshì	female, lady	1.4	前后	qiánhòu	around (a certain time)	2.6
女子	nǚzǐ	female, feminine; woman	1.4	前门	qiánmén	the front gate, [a place name]	2.6
				前年	qiánnián	the year before last	2.6
				前天	qiántiān	the day before yesterday	2.6
				前言	qiányán	preface, forward	3.3
				前站	qiánzhàn	the next stop, the next station	2.6
				钱	qián	money	2.6
				钱包	qiánbāo	wallet, purse	3.1
				亲	qīn	a relative, to be close	3.1
				亲爱	qīn'ài	my dear	3.1
				亲人	qīnrén	loved ones	3.1
				亲自	qīnzi	in person; personally	3.1
				轻	qīng	light (not heavy)	3.5

Q

				七	qī	seven	number
				七月	qīyuè	July	date
				期	qī	period	date
				骑	qí	by, riding (bicycle, horse etc.)	3.6
				骑马	qímǎ	to ride a horse	3.6
				起	qǐ	to get up	3.4
				起飞	qǐfēi	to take off	3.4/3.6
				起来	qǐlái	to get up	3.4
				起名	qǐmíng	to give a name to	3.4
				起重机	qǐzhòngjī	crane (machine)	3.4
				起子	qǐzi	bottle opener	3.4
				起作用	qǐzuòyòng	to play a role	3.4
				气	qì	breath, air	3.3
				气候	qìhòu	climate	3.3
				汽	qì	steam	2.6
				汽车	qìchē	car, bus	2.6
				汽水	qìshuǐ	soda water, soft drink	2.6
				千	qiān	one thousand	number
				前	qián	before, in front of	2.6
				前后	qiánhòu	around (a certain time)	2.6
				前门	qiánmén	the front gate, [a place name]	2.6
				前年	qiánnián	the year before last	2.6
				前天	qiántiān	the day before yesterday	2.6
				前言	qiányán	preface, forward	3.3
				前站	qiánzhàn	the next stop, the next station	2.6
				钱	qián	money	2.6
				钱包	qiánbāo	wallet, purse	3.1
				亲	qīn	a relative, to be close	3.1
				亲爱	qīn'ài	my dear	3.1
				亲人	qīnrén	loved ones	3.1
				亲自	qīnzi	in person; personally	3.1
				轻	qīng	light (not heavy)	3.5

O

哦 ò Oh really? 1.2

P

旁 páng side 3.6
 旁边 pángbiān beside 3.6

轻声	qīngshēng	in a soft voice; softly	3.5
请	qǐng	please...; to request, to invite	2.4 3.6
请便	qǐngbiàn	as you wish	2.4
请问	qǐngwèn	Excuse me, may I ask...?	2.4
秋	qiū	autumn	3.3
秋收	qiūshōu	autumn harvest	3.5
秋天	qiūtiān	autumn	3.3
区	qū	area, district	3.3
区别	qūbié	difference	3.3
区分	qūfēn	to differentiate, to distinguish	3.3
去	qù	to go to	1.1
去年	qùnián	last year	1.6/2.1

R

然	rán	but	3.6
然后	ránhòu	then	3.6
让	ràng	to let, to tell or ask (someone) to...	3.4
让路	rànglù	to give way	3.4
热	rè	hot	3.3
热爱	rè'ài	to adore	3.3
热带	rèdài	tropical region	3.5
热能	rènéng	thermal energy	3.3
热心	rèxīn	enthusiasm	3.3
人	rén	person, people	0.5
人才	réncái	talented person	3.1
人大	réndà	the National People's Congress (abbr.)	0
人道	réndào	humanity	2.3
人工	réngōng	man-made, artificial	1.4
人间	rénjiān	world	2.1
人口	rénkǒu	population	2.3
人们	rénmen	people	0.5
人民	rénmín	the people	2.1
人人	rénrén	everybody	0.5
人物	rénwù	figure, character (in a book, play, etc.)	3.1
认	rèn	to recognise	2.1
认生	rènshēng	to be shy with strangers	2.1
认识	rènshi	to know	2.1
认为	rènwéi	to consider	3.2
认真	rènzhēn	conscientious, serious	3.6
认字	rènzi	to know how to read	2.1
日	rì	day, sun	1.1
日报	rìbào	daily newspaper	2.1
日本	Rìběn	Japan	1.1
日本人	Rìběnrén	Japanese person	1.2
日常生活	rìcháng shēnghuó	daily life	3.3

日出	rìchū	sunrise	2.4
日夜	rìyè	night and day	3.5
日子	rìzi	day, daily life	1.4
肉	ròu	meat	2.5
肉店	ròudiàn	butchery	3.1
肉丁	ròudīng	diced meat	3.1
如	rú	in compliance with, according to, for example	3.1
如果...就	rúguǒ...jiù	if... then...	3.1

S

三	sān	three	number
三心二意	sānxīn'èryì	to be in two minds, half-hearted	3.3
三月	sānyuè	March	date
色	sè	colour	ST1
山	shān	mountain	1.3
山东	Shāndōng	Shandong Province	1.3
山海关	Shānhǎiguān	Shanhaiguan Pass	3.1
山区	shānqū	mountainous region	3.3
山水	shānshuǐ	scenery	3.3
山水画	shānshuǐhuà	landscape painting	ST1
山西	Shānxī	Shanxi Province	1.3
山羊	shānyáng	goat	2.5
商	shāng	business	3.1
商场	shāngchǎng	market, bazaar	3.3
商店	shāngdiàn	shop	3.1
商人	shāngrén	business person	3.1
上	shàng	above; to go up	1.4
上班	shàngbān	to go to work	2.2
上边	shàngbian	above	2.3
上次	shàngcì	last time (the time before this one)	3.3
上当	shàngdàng	to be taken in, to be trapped	3.6
上等	shàngděng	high quality	3.5
上海	Shànghǎi	Shanghai	1.4
上课	shàngkè	to go to class	2.2
上午	shàngwǔ	morning	3.2
上下文	shàngxiàwén	context	2.2
上学	shàngxué	to study, to attend school or university	1.4
上衣	shàngyī	jacket	3.5
少	shǎo	few	1.6
谁	shéi	who?	1.2
谁的	shéide	whose?	1.2
身	shēn	body	3.2
身边	shēnbiān	by one's side	3.2
身分	shēnfen	status, identity	3.2
身旁	shēnpáng	beside someone	3.6
身上	shēnshàng	on one's person	3.2

身体	shēntǐ	health, body	3.2	室	shì	a room, a hall	3.5
什	shén	see 什么 shénme	1.1	收	shōu	to receive	3.5
什么	shénme	what?	1.1	收到	shōudào	to receive	3.5
什么时候	shénmeshíhòu	when?	1.6	收回	shōuhuí	to take back	3.5
生	shēng	to be born	1.2	收买	shōumǎi	to purchase, to bribe	3.5
生病	shēngbìng	to fall sick	3.4	收听	shōutīng	to listen to	3.5
生菜	shēngcài	raw vegetables	2.5	收音机	shōuyīnjī	radio	3.5
生动	shēngdòng	lively, vivid	3.6	手	shǒu	hand	3.5
生孩子	shēngháizi	to have (to give birth to) a child	1.4	手工	shǒugōng	handwork	3.5
生活	shēnghuó	to live; life	3.1	手提包	shǒutībāo	bag, handbag	3.5
生气	shēngqì	to be angry	3.3	书	shū	book	1.2
生日	shēngrì	birthday	1.2	书包	shūbāo	satchel, school bag	3.1
生肉	shēngròu	raw meat	2.5	书店	shūdiàn	book shop	3.1
生物	shēngwù	living things	3.1	书法	shūfǎ	calligraphy	1.2/3.2
生物学	shēngwùxué	biology	3.1	书法家	shūfǎjiā	calligrapher	1.4
生意	shēngyì	business	3.2	书房	shūfáng	study (room in a house)	2.4
生字	shēngzì	new character	1.2	书写	shūxiě	writing	1.25
声	shēng	noise, voice, tone	3.1	水	shuǐ	water	1.5
声明	shēngmíng	to state, to declare; declaration	3.1	水果	shuǐguǒ	fruit	3.1
声学	shēngxué	acoustics	3.1	水饺	shuǐjiǎo	ravioli	2.5
声音	shēngyīn	noise	3.2	水牛	shuǐniú	water buffalo	2.5
升	shēng	to move upward	3.6	水平	shuǐpíng	level	3.6
师	shī	teacher	1.2	水手	shuǐshǒu	sailor	3.5
师生	shīshēng	teacher and students	1.2	睡	shuì	to sleep	ST2
十	shí	ten	number	睡觉	shuìjiào	to sleep	3.2
十分	shífēn	very	2.6	睡着	shuìzháo	to fall asleep	ST2
十月	shíyuè	October	date	说	shuō	to speak, to say	1.25
十字	shízi	cross	1.1	说法	shuōfǎ	expression, manner of speaking	1.25
十字路口	shízi lùkǒu	intersection, 4-way junction	2.6	说服	shuōfú	to persuade, to convince	3.5
时	shí	time	1.6	说明	shuōmíng	to explain; explanation	2.4
时差	shíchā	time difference	3.5	说完	shuōwán	to finish speaking	2.1
时候	shíhòu	(a point in) time, (the duration of) time	1.6	思	sī	thought; to think	3.2
时间	shíjiān	(the concept of) time, (the duration of) time	2.1	思想家	sīxiǎngjiā	thought	3.2
时刻	shíkè	time, hour, moment	3.6	四	sì	thinker	3.2
时期	shíqī	period, era	1.6	四	sì	four	number
识	shí	to know	2.1	四川	Sìchuān	Sichuan Province	2.3
识字	shízi	to know how to read	2.1	四声	sìshēng	the four tones	3.1
始	shǐ	beginning	3.4	四月	sìyuè	April	date
是	shì	to be, that's right!	0.5	诉	sù	to relate, to accuse	ST3
是不是	shìbúshì	... is it?, ... isn't it?	0.5	算	suàn	to calculate	ST3
是的	shìde	that's right!	1.2	虽	suī	though, although	3.6
是非	shìfēi	true and false	3.3	虽然	suīrán	although...	3.6
是吗	shìma	is that right?	0.5	岁	suì	years old	2.1
事	shì	thing, event	2.4	所	suǒ	place, Mw	3.5
市	shì	city	3.3	所以	suǒyǐ	so, that's why...	3.5
市场	shìchǎng	market	3.3	所有	suǒyǒu	all the...	3.5
市长	shìzhǎng	mayor	3.3	所有的	suǒyǒude	all the...	3.5
市中心	shìzhōngxīn	heart of a city, city centre	3.3				

T

位子	wèizi	place, seat	2. 5	下等	xiàděng	poor quality	3. 5
文	wén	written language, culture	1. 1	下课	xiàkè	to finish class, class dismissed!	2. 2
文法	wénfǎ	grammar	1. 1	下来	xiàlai	to come down	2. 2
文化	wénhuà	culture, civilisation	3. 3	下去	xiàqu	to go down	2. 2
文明	wénmíng	civilisation	2. 4	下午	xiàwǔ	afternoon	3. 2
文	wén	language, culture	1. 1	下星期见	xiàxīngqī jiàn	See you next week!	3. 4
文人	wénrén	scholar	1. 1	下雨	xiàyǔ	to rain, raining	3. 3
文物	wénwù	cultural relics	3. 1	先	xiān	before, first	2. 5
文学	wénxué	literature	1. 2	先后	xiānhòu	one after the other	2. 6
文学家	wénxuéjiā	writer	1. 4	先生	xiānsheng	mister, sir	2. 5/3. 1
文言	wényán	classical Chinese	3. 3	先天	xiāntiān	inborn, innate	2. 5
文字	wénzi	writing	1. 1	现	xiàn	present, manifest; to appear	2. 2
文字学	wénzixué	philology	1. 2	现钱	xiànrqián	to pay in cash	2. 6
问	wèn	to ask	2. 3	现象	xiànxàng	phenomenon	3. 1
问好	wènzhào	to send one's regards to	2. 3	现在	xiànzài	now	2. 2
问候	wènzhòu	to send one's regards to	2. 3	香	xiāng	fragrant	song
问题	wèntí	question, problem	2. 3	想	xiǎng	to think	1. 3
我	wǒ	I, me	0. 5	想法	xiǎngfǎ	idea, opinion	1. 3
我的	wǒde	my, mine	1. 2	想象	xiǎngxiàng	to imagine	3. 1
我国	wǒguó	national, of my country	0. 5	想一想	xiǎngyixiǎng	to think over	1. 3
我们	wǒmen	we, us	0. 5	象	xiàng	elephant, appearance	3. 1
我们的	wǒmende	our, ours	ST1	小	xiǎo	to be small	0
无	wú	without	number	小便	xiǎobiàn	to urinate	3. 6
五	wǔ	five	2. 3	小车	xiǎochē	car, wheelbarrow	1. 6
五行	wǔxíng	the five elements	date	小吃	xiǎochī	light snack	2. 3
五月	wǔyuè	May	3. 2	小国	xiǎoguó	small country	0
午	wǔ	noon	3. 2	小看	xiǎokàn	to look down upon	1. 3
午饭	wǔfàn	lunch	3. 1	小李	Xiǎo Lǐ	[name] Little Li	0. 5
物	wù	things, beings, matter		小马	Xiǎo Mǎ	[name] Little Ma	0. 5
				小米	xiǎomǐ	millet	2. 5
				小气	xiǎoqì	mean, stingy	3. 3
				小人	xiǎorén	person of low position	0. 5
				小人书	xiǎorénshū	cartoon, picture-story book	1. 2
				小山	xiǎoshān	hill	1. 3
				小时	xiǎoshí	an hour	1. 6
				小说	xiǎoshuō	a novel	1. 25
				小田	Xiǎo Tián	[name] Little Tian	0. 5
				小王	Xiǎo Wáng	[name] Little Wang	0
				小心	xiǎoxīn	watch out! beware of...	3. 3
				小学	xiǎoxué	primary school	1. 2
				小学生	xiǎoxuéshēng	primary school student	1. 2
				小雨	xiǎoyǔ	light rain	3. 3
				校	xiào	school	3. 6
				校友	xiàoyǒu	schoolmate, alumnus	3. 6
				校园	xiàoyuán	campus	3. 6
				校长	xiàozhǎng	school principal	3. 6
				些	xiē	[Mw] some	3. 2
				鞋	xié	shoe	ST3
				鞋底	xié dǐ	sole	ST3
				写	xiě	to write	1. 25
				写错	xiěcuò	to write incorrectly	2. 5

X

西	xī	west	1. 3	小人	xiǎorén	person of low position	0. 5
西安	Xī'ān	Xi'an	2. 6	小人书	xiǎorénshū	cartoon, picture-story book	1. 2
西北	xīběi	northwest	1. 3	小山	xiǎoshān	hill	1. 3
西方	xīfāng	the west, the Occident	1. 4	小时	xiǎoshí	an hour	1. 6
西服	xīfú	Western-style clothing	3. 5	小说	xiǎoshuō	a novel	1. 25
西湖	Xīhú	West Lake	2. 3	小田	Xiǎo Tián	[name] Little Tian	0. 5
西南	xīnán	southwest	1. 3	小王	Xiǎo Wáng	[name] Little Wang	0
西四	Xīsì	[place name] Xisi	2. 6	小心	xiǎoxīn	watch out! beware of...	3. 3
西药	xīyào	Western medicine	3. 4	小学	xiǎoxué	primary school	1. 2
西医	xīyī	(doctor of) Western medicine	2. 6	小学生	xiǎoxuéshēng	primary school student	1. 2
息	xī	breath, message	2. 4	小雨	xiǎoyǔ	light rain	3. 3
喜爱	xǐ	happiness; to rejoice	1. 5	校	xiào	school	3. 6
喜爱	xǐ'ài	to be fond of	1. 5	校友	xiàoyǒu	schoolmate, alumnus	3. 6
喜欢	xǐhuan	to like	1. 5	校园	xiàoyuán	campus	3. 6
喜酒	xǐjiǔ	wedding feast	1. 5	校长	xiàozhǎng	school principal	3. 6
喜事	xǐshì	happy event, marriage	2. 4	些	xiē	[Mw] some	3. 2
下	xià	to go down, to get off; below	2. 2	鞋	xié	shoe	ST3
下班	xiàbān	to finish work	2. 2	鞋底	xié dǐ	sole	ST3
下次	xiàcì	next time	3. 3	写	xiě	to write	1. 25
				写错	xiěcuò	to write incorrectly	2. 5

写完	xiěwán	to finish writing	2. 1	言	yán	word	3. 3
写字	xiězì	to write characters	1. 25	阳	yáng	Yang, sun	1. 1
谢	xiè	to thank	2. 5	羊	yáng	sheep	2. 5
谢谢	xièxiè	thank you!	2. 5	羊毛	yángmáo	wool	2. 6
新	xīn	new	3. 4	羊肉	yáng ròu	lamb, mutton	2. 5
新年	xīnián	new year	3. 4	样	yàng	type, sort	1. 25
心	xīn	heart	3. 3	样本	yàngběn	sample (printed material)	1. 25
心事	xīnshì	worry	3. 3	样子	yàngzi	appearance, manner	1. 4
心疼	xīnténg	to worry	3. 4	要	yào	to want, to order (in restaurants)	1. 5
心中	xīnzhōng	from the bottom of one's heart	3. 3	要不	yàobu	otherwise	1. 5
信	xìn	letter; to believe in	3. 6	要饭	yàofàn	to beg	2. 3
信心	xìnxīn	confidence, faith	3. 6	要是	yàoshi	if	1. 5
信息学	xìnxīxué	informatics	3. 6	药	yào	medicine	3. 4
信用	xìnyòng	trustworthiness, credit	3. 6	药店	yàodiàn	pharmacy	3. 4
星	xīng	star	date	药房	yàofáng	pharmacy	3. 4
星期	xīngqī	week	date	药水	yàoshuǐ	lotion, liquid medicine	3. 4
星期一	xīngqīyī	Monday	date	也	yě	also, as well	0. 5
星期二	xīngqī'èr	Tuesday	date	夜	yè	night	3. 5
星期三	xīngqīsān	Wednesday	date	夜班	yèbān	night shift	3. 5
星期四	xīngqīsì	Thursday	date	夜里	yèlǐ	night	3. 5
星期五	xīngqīwǔ	Friday	date	夜市	yèshì	night market	3. 5
星期六	xīngqīliù	Saturday	date	一	yī	one	number
星期日	xīngqīrì	Sunday	date	一半儿	yībànr	half	2. 2
星期天	xīngqītiān	Sunday	date	一边…	yībiān…	(two things) at the same	
行	xíng *	to go	2. 3	一边…	yībiān…	time	2. 3
行不行	xíngbúxíng	O. K. or not?	2. 3	一带	yīdài	in the region of. . .	3. 5
行李	xínglǐ	baggage, luggage	3. 3	一点点	yīdiǎndiǎn	a tiny bit	1. 5
行人	xíng rén	passersby	2. 3	一点儿	yīdiǎnr	a little	1. 5
行书	xíngshū	running style (calligraphy)	2. 3	一定	yīdìng	surely	3. 4
行为	xíngwéi	behaviour, action	3. 2	一方面…	yīfāngmiàn…	on the one hand. . . on	
醒	xǐng	to wake up	ST2			the other hand. . .	3. 1
姓	xìng	surname	1. 1	一分为二	yīfēnwéi'èr	one divides into two,	
姓名	xìngmíng	full name	1. 1			everything divides into two	3. 2
姓儿	xìngr	surname	1. 1	一共	yīgòng	in all	3. 5
兴	xìng	enthusiasm	3. 1	一会儿	yíhuìr	a moment	2. 2
休	xiū	to rest, to stop	2. 4	一刻钟	yíkèzhōng	a quarter of an hour	3. 6
休息	xiūxi	to have a rest	2. 4	一块儿	yíkuàir	together	2. 6
休息室	xiūxi shì	rest room	3. 5	一路平安	yílùpíng'ān	Have a safe trip!	3. 6
学	xué	to study	1. 2	一万	yíwàn	ten thousand 2. 1	
学报	xuébào	school or college journal	2. 1	一心一意	yíxīnyíyì	with all one's heart	3. 3
学年	xuénián	school year	1. 2	一样	yíyàng	the same	1. 25/3. 1
学期	xuéqī	school term (semester)	1. 2	一言为定	yíyánwéidìng	understood! that's settled then!	3. 6
学生	xuésheng	student	1. 2	一月	yíyuè	January	date
学说	xuéshuō	theory	1. 25	医	yī	medicine	2. 6
学位	xuéwèi	diploma	2. 5	医生	yīshēng	doctor	2. 6
学问	xuéwen	learning, knowledge	2. 3	医学	yīxué	medical studies	2. 6
学院	xuéyuàn	institute	2. 6	医院	yīyuàn	hospital	2. 6
				衣	yī	clothing	3. 5
				衣服	yīfu	clothing	3. 5
				以	yǐ	make use of; use	2. 1
				以后	yǐhòu	after, afterwards	2. 6

Y

呀 ya [exclamatory particle] song

正常	zhèngcháng	normal	3.3	住在	zhùzài	to live in/at	2.4
正在	zhèngzài	in the process of	2.2	祝	zhù	to wish	3.6
知	zhī	to know	2.3	祝酒	zhùjiǔ	to propose a toast	3.6
知道	zhīdao	to know	2.3	庄	zhuāng	village	ST2
知己	zhījī	close friend	3.5	庄稼	zhuāngjia	crops	song
知识	zhīshi	knowledge	2.3	庄子	Zhuāngzǐ	Zhuangzi	ST2
知识分子	zhīshifēnzǐ	an intellectual	2.6	子	zǐ	child, [suffix]	1.4
知心	zhīxīn	intimate	3.3	子女	zǐnǚ	children	1.4
只	zhī	[Mw]	ST2	子儿	zǐr	seed, copper coin	1.4
	zhǐ	only	2.2	字	zì	(Chinese) character	1.1
只好	zhǐhǎo	to have to	2.2	字母	zìmǔ	letter of the alphabet	3.1
只是	zhǐshì	but, merely, only	2.2	字儿	zǐr	(Chinese) character	1.1
中	zhōng	middle	0	字体	zìtǐ	style of a character	3.2
中等	zhōngděng	medium grade	2.5	字样	zìyàng	modal of written characters	1.25
中东	Zhōngdōng	the Middle East	1.3	自	zì	oneself	2.3
中法	Zhōng-Fǎ	Sino-French	0.5	自动	zìdòng	automatic	3.6
中国	Zhōngguó	China	1.1	自己	zìjǐ	oneself	3.5
中国话	Zhōngguóhuà	Chinese (language)	2.2	自觉	zìjué	conscious, aware	3.2
中国人	Zhōngguóren	a Chinese person	0.5	自来水	zìláishuǐ	running water, tap water	2.3
中间	zhōngjiān	in the middle	2.1	自然	zìrán	natural	3.6
中立	zhōnglì	neutral	1.1	自行车	zìxíngchē	bicycle	2.3
中立国	zhōnglìguó	neutral country	1.1	自学	zìxué	self-study	2.3
中年	zhōngnián	middle aged	1.6	自在	zìzài	comfortable, at ease	2.3
中秋	zhōngqiū	mid autumn	3.3	自主	zìzhǔ	to act on one's own, to decide	
中外	zhōngwài	Chinese and foreign	1.25			for oneself	3.1
中文	Zhōngwén	Chinese (written) language	1.1	走	zǒu	to walk, to leave	2.1
中文书	Zhōngwénshū	books in Chinese	1.2	走后门	zǒuhòumén	to have backdoor dealings	2.6
中午	zhōngwǔ	midday	3.2	走马看花	zǒumǎkànhuā	to have a superficial under-	
中心	zhōngxīn	centre	3.3			standing of	2.1
中学	zhōngxué	middle school	1.2	租	zū	to rent	3.6
中学生	zhōngxuéshēng	middle school student	1.2	最	zuì	the most	2.1
中药	zhōngyào	Chinese medicine	3.4	最大	zuìdà	the biggest	2.1
中医	zhōngyī	Chinese medicine, doctor of		最多	zuìduō	the most (numerous)	2.1
		Chinese medicine	2.6	最好	zuìhǎo	the best	2.1
钟	zhōng	clock, bell	3.4	最后	zuìhòu	finally	ST2
钟楼	zhōnglóu	bell tower	3.4	最近	zuìjìn	recently	2.1
钟头	zhōngtóu	an hour	3.4	最小	zuìxiǎo	the smallest	2.1
种	zhǒng	sort, type	3.4	昨	zuó	yesterday	2.2
	zhòng	to plant	3.4	昨天	zuótiān	yesterday	2.2
种地	zhòngdì	to cultivate the soil	3.4	作	zuò	to do, to make	1.4
种田	zhòngtián	to cultivate the fields	3.4	作法	zuòfǎ	way of doing, way of making	1.4
重	zhòng	heavy	2.1	作风	zuòfēng	style, style of working	3.3
重点	zhòngdiǎn	important point	2.1	作家	zuòjiā	writer	1.4
重要	zhòngyào	important	2.1	作为	zuòwéi	as; conduct, deed, action	3.2
主	zhǔ	main	3.1	作用	zuòyòng	function, action	2.3
主动	zhǔdòng	to take the initiative	3.6	作主	zuòzhǔ	to take the responsibility for a	
主人	zhǔrén	master, owner	3.1			decision	3.1
主体	zhǔtǐ	main part, main body	3.2	坐	zuò	to sit down, to travel by	1.6
主要	zhǔyào	main, major	3.1	做	zuò	to do, to make	2.5
主张	zhǔzhāng	to hold, to maintain, to advocate	3.1	做成	zuòchéng	to make into	3.6
住	zhù	to live in/at. . .	2.4	做工	zuògōng	to work	2.5
住房	zhùfáng	lodging, housing	2.4				
住院	zhùyuan	to be hospitalised	2.6				

TAPE 1

SIDE A

- Phonetics (*Pinyin*)
- Initials
- Distinction between certain initials
- Finals
- Distinction between certain finals
- The four tones
- Pronunciation exercises

■ PREPARATION

- Sequence 0
- Sequence 0.5
- Numbers and dates

■ PART 1

- Sequence 1.1
- Sequence 1.2

SIDE B

- Sequence 1.25
- Sequence 1.3
- “Snowball” version 1
- Sequence 1.4
- Sequence 1.5
- Sequence 1.6
- “Snowball” version 2
- Supplementary text 1:
A landscape painting

TAPE 2

SIDE A

- Traditional zither music

■ PART 2

- Sequence 2.1
- Sequence 2.2
- Sequence 2.3
- “Snowball” version 3
- Sequence 2.4
- Sequence 2.5
- Sequence 2.6
- “Snowball” version 4
- Supplementary text 2:
Zhuangzi and the butterfly

■ PART 3

- Sequence 3.1
- Sequence 3.2

SIDE B

- Sequence 3.3
- “Snowball” version 5
- Sequence 3.4
- Sequence 3.5
- Sequence 3.6
- “Snowball” version 6
- Supplementary text 3:
Old meat
- Song: *Nanniwan*

责任编辑:周珪杰 郁 苓

封面设计:唐少文

插 图:Christian Buthigieg 李士伋

版面设计:René Daire 贾寅淮

汉语语言文字启蒙(I)

Joël Bellassen(白乐桑)张朋朋

*

©华语教学出版社

华语教学出版社出版

(中国北京百万庄路 24 号)

邮政编码 100037

电话:010-68320585

传真:010-68326333

网址:www.sinolingua.com.cn

电子信箱:hyjx@sinolingua.com.cn

北京市松源印刷有限公司

中国国际图书贸易总公司海外发行

(中国北京车公庄西路 35 号)

邮政编码 100044

新华书店国内发行

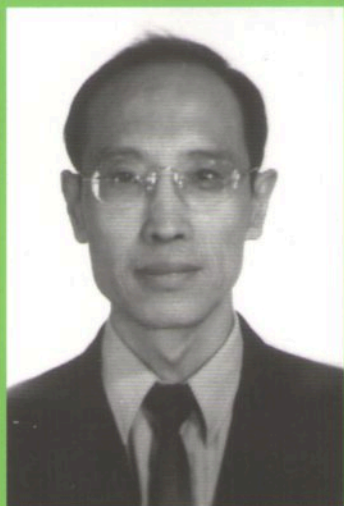
1997 年(16 开)第一版

2009 年第五次印刷

(汉英)

ISBN 978-7-80052-507-0

定价:75.00 元



张朋朋，1947年出生，1975年毕业于北京语言学院法语专业。自1975年开始从事对外汉语教学工作，曾在法国巴黎大学和瑞士日内瓦大学教授中文。现为北京语言文化大学教师。其著作还有《现代千字文》、《汉语外贸会话》、《现代反义词词典》等。

Zhang Pengpeng, born in 1947, graduated from the Beijing Language Institute in 1975, majoring in French. He has taught Chinese to non-native speakers in Beijing, at the University of Paris and at Geneva University in Switzerland. He is at present senior lecturer at the Beijing Language and Culture University. His other works are 《现代千字文》, 《汉语外贸会话》, 《现代反义词词典》 etc.

A Key to Chinese Speech and Writing (I)

Joël Bellassen Zhang Pengpeng

This introductory course not only serves as a textbook but also as a guide which, through a variety of routes (etymology, semantics, linguistics, graphics and culture), can help you think in Chinese.

The aim of this course is to present the Chinese language as it is: a world of signs with their origin and the logic of their composition, represented by the most frequently used ones.

The 400 characters featured in Volume I will enable you to recognize at least 70 % of the characters used in books and newspapers.

A unique language like Chinese necessitates an original approach and teaching method. More than just a guide to reading and speaking Chinese, this course is above all a way of embracing the culture and mentality of the Chinese people.

A great adventure for the mind!

《汉语语言文字启蒙》，顾名思义，这是一本汉语语言文字的启蒙教材，分一、二两集，本书为第一集。

汉语的一个重要特点是：其汉字是表意文字，个体突出，以单个汉字为基础可以层层构词。本教材的第一册是在三千多个常用字中选择了其中使用率最高的四百个汉字（使用率近70%），并以此为基础编写而成。

本教材在总体设计上力图体现汉语字与词关系这一特点，循汉语之本来面目进行教学，故本教材可称为“字本位教学法”。作者使用此法曾有多年的实践，教学效果事半功倍。

本书作者兼收并蓄，突出了语言教学的交际性和循序渐进等原则。本书对中国传统文化的介绍穿插其中，极受学生欢迎。

本书在汉字字形、字义教学上，颇具匠心，便于学生记忆及教师使用。

本书版面设计生动活泼，图文并茂，独具特色，书后附繁体字课文及英文译文。

本书配有两盒录音带。

ISBN 978-7-80052-507-0



9 787800 525070 >

定价：75.00 元(+MP3)

9-CE-3204 PA